

HDL Compiler™ for Verilog User Guide

Version D-2010.03, March 2010

SYNOPSYS®

Copyright Notice and Proprietary Information

Copyright © 2010 Synopsys, Inc. All rights reserved. This software and documentation contain confidential and proprietary information that is the property of Synopsys, Inc. The software and documentation are furnished under a license agreement and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the license agreement. No part of the software and documentation may be reproduced, transmitted, or translated, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, manual, optical, or otherwise, without prior written permission of Synopsys, Inc., or as expressly provided by the license agreement.

Right to Copy Documentation

The license agreement with Synopsys permits licensee to make copies of the documentation for its internal use only. Each copy shall include all copyrights, trademarks, service marks, and proprietary rights notices, if any. Licensee must assign sequential numbers to all copies. These copies shall contain the following legend on the cover page:

“This document is duplicated with the permission of Synopsys, Inc., for the exclusive use of _____ and its employees. This is copy number _____.”

Destination Control Statement

All technical data contained in this publication is subject to the export control laws of the United States of America. Disclosure to nationals of other countries contrary to United States law is prohibited. It is the reader's responsibility to determine the applicable regulations and to comply with them.

Disclaimer

SYNOPSYS, INC., AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Registered Trademarks (®)

Synopsys, AMPS, Astro, Behavior Extracting Synthesis Technology, Cadabra, CATS, Certify, CHIPit, Design Compiler, DesignWare, Formality, HDL Analyst, HSIM, HSPICE, Identify, Leda, MAST, ModelTools, NanoSim, OpenVera, PathMill, Physical Compiler, PrimeTime, SCOPE, Simply Better Results, SiVL, SNUG, SolvNet, Syndicated, Synplicity, Synplify, Synplify Pro, Synthesis Constraints Optimization Environment, TetraMAX, the Synplicity logo, UMRBus, VCS, Vera, and YIELDirector are registered trademarks of Synopsys, Inc.

Trademarks (™)

AFGen, Apollo, Astro-Rail, Astro-Xtalk, Aurora, AvanWaves, BEST, Columbia, Columbia-CE, Confirma, Cosmos, CosmosLE, CosmosScope, CRITIC, CustomExplorer, CustomSim, DC Expert, DC Professional, DC Ultra, Design Analyzer, Design Vision, DesignerHDL, DesignPower, DFTMAX, Direct Silicon Access, Discovery, Eclipse, Encore, EPIC, Galaxy, Galaxy Custom Designer, HANEX, HAPS, HapsTrak, HDL Compiler, Hercules, Hierarchical Optimization Technology, High-performance ASIC Prototyping System, HSIM^{plus}, i-Virtual Stepper, IICE, in-Sync, iN-Tandem, Jupiter, Jupiter-DP, JupiterXT, JupiterXT-ASIC, Liberty, Libra-Passport, Library Compiler, Magellan, Mars, Mars-Rail, Mars-Xtalk, Milkyway, ModelSource, Module Compiler, MultiPoint, Physical Analyst, Planet, Planet-PL, Polaris, Power Compiler, Raphael, Saturn, Scirocco, Scirocco-i, Star-RCXT, Star-SimXT, StarRC, System Compiler, System Designer, Taurus, TotalRecall, TSUPREM-4, VCS Express, VCSi, VHDL Compiler, VirSim, and VMC are trademarks of Synopsys, Inc.

Service Marks (SM)

MAP-in, SVP Café, and TAP-in are service marks of Synopsys, Inc.

SystemC is a trademark of the Open SystemC Initiative and is used under license.

ARM and AMBA are registered trademarks of ARM Limited.

Saber is a registered trademark of SabreMark Limited Partnership and is used under license.

All other product or company names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

What's New in This Release	xii
About This Manual	xii
Customer Support.	xv
1. Introduction to HDL Compiler for Verilog	
Reading Verilog Designs	1-2
Reading Designs With Dependencies Automatically	1-2
Reading, Analyzing, and Elaborating Designs	1-3
Reading and Analyzing Designs Without Elaboration	1-3
File Dependency Support	1-4
Supported Variables	1-4
Examples	1-5
Automatic Detection of RTL Language From File Extensions	1-5
Controlling the Verilog Version Used for Reading RTL Files	1-6
Elaboration Reports	1-6
Reporting Elaboration Errors	1-7
Methodology	1-9
Example.	1-9
hdlin_elab_errors_deep FAQs	1-15
Netlist Reader	1-17
Automatic Detection of Input Type	1-17
Reading Commands Summary.	1-18
Defining Macros	1-18

Using analyze -define	1-18
Predefined Macros	1-19
Global Macro Reset: `undefineall	1-20
Parameterized Designs	1-20
Reading Large Designs	1-22
Use of \$display During RTL Elaboration	1-23
Inputs and Outputs	1-24
Input Descriptions	1-24
Design Hierarchy	1-26
Component Inference and Instantiation	1-26
Naming Considerations	1-26
Generic Netlists	1-27
Inference Reports	1-30
Error Messages	1-30
Language Construct Support	1-31
Licenses	1-31
2. Coding Considerations	
Coding for QoR	2-2
Expose Constants to Reduce Hardware	2-2
Size Variables Efficiently	2-2
Creating Relative Placement in Hardware Description Languages	2-3
Directives for Specifying Relative Placement	2-4
Creating Groups Using `rp_group and `rp_endgroup	2-4
Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances Using `rp_place	2-5
Placing Cells Automatically Using `rp_fill	2-6
Specifying Placement for Array Elements Using `rp_array_dir	2-8
Specifying Cell Alignment Using rp_align	2-8
Specifying Cell Orientation Using rp_orient	2-9
Ignoring Relative Placement Using rp_ignore and rp_endignore	2-10
Relative Placement Examples	2-11
General Coding Guidelines	2-17
Separate Sequential and Combinational Assignments	2-17
Persistence of Values Across Calls to Tasks	2-18

defparam	2-18
Function Placed Within a Module	2-19
Interacting With Other Flows.	2-19
Synthesis Flows.	2-19
Controlling Structure With Parentheses	2-19
Multibit Components	2-20
Low-Power Flows.	2-20
Keeping Signal Names	2-20
Verification Flows.	2-23
Simulation/Synthesis Mismatch Issues.	2-23
3. Modeling Combinational Logic	
Synthetic Operators	3-2
Logic and Arithmetic Expressions.	3-4
Basic Operators	3-4
Carry-Bit Overflow	3-5
Divide Operators	3-6
Sign Conversions	3-7
Multiplexing Logic	3-12
SELECT_OP Inference	3-13
One-Hot Multiplexer Inference	3-14
MUX_OP Inference	3-15
MUX_OP Inference Examples.	3-18
Considerations When Using If Statements to Code For MUX_OPs	3-22
MUX_OP Inference Limitations	3-25
MUX_OP Components With Variable Indexing.	3-26
Modeling Complex MUX Inferences: Bit and Memory Accesses.	3-26
Bit-Truncation Coding for DC Ultra Datapath Extraction.	3-27
Latches in Combinational Logic	3-30
4. Modeling Sequential Logic	
Generic Sequential Cells (SEQGENs)	4-2
Inference Reports for Registers	4-5
Register Inference Guidelines.	4-6

Multiple Events in an always Block	4-6
Minimizing Registers	4-7
Keeping Unloaded Registers	4-8
Preventing Unwanted Latches: <code>hdlin_check_no_latch</code>	4-11
Register Inference Limitations	4-12
Register Inference Examples	4-13
Inferring Latches	4-13
Basic D Latch	4-14
D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Use <code>async_set_reset</code>	4-14
D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use <code>hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset</code>	4-15
Inferring Flip-Flops	4-16
Basic D Flip-Flop	4-17
D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using <code>?: Construct</code>	4-18
D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset	4-18
D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset	4-19
D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use <code>sync_set_reset</code>	4-20
D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load	4-20
D Flip-Flops With Complex Set/Reset Signals	4-21
Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls	4-23
5. Modeling Finite State Machines	
FSM Coding Requirements for Automatic Inference.	5-2
FSM Inference Variables	5-3
FSM Coding Example.	5-4
FSM Inference Report	5-6
Enumerated Types	5-7
6. Modeling Three-State Buffers	
Using z Values	6-2
Three-State Driver Inference Report	6-2
Assigning a Single Three-State Driver to a Single Variable	6-3
Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable.	6-4

Registering Three-State Driver Data	6-5
Instantiating Three-State Drivers	6-6
Errors and Warnings	6-6
7. HDL Compiler Synthesis Directives	
async_set_reset	7-3
async_set_reset_local	7-3
async_set_reset_local_all	7-3
dc_tcl_script_begin and dc_tcl_script_end	7-4
enum	7-6
full_case	7-7
infer_multibit and dont_infer_multibit	7-9
Using the infer_multibit Directive	7-10
Using the dont_infer_multibit Directive	7-11
Multibit Benefits	7-11
Reporting Multibit Components	7-12
Limitations of Multibit Inference	7-13
infer_mux	7-13
infer_onehot_mux	7-14
keep_signal_name	7-14
one_cold	7-14
one_hot	7-14
parallel_case	7-15
preserve_sequential	7-16
sync_set_reset	7-16
sync_set_reset_local	7-17
sync_set_reset_local_all	7-18
template	7-19
translate_off and translate_on (Deprecated)	7-19

8. HDL Compiler Variables

HDL Compiler Reading-Related Variables	8-2
Commands for Writing Out Verilog	8-7
Variables for Writing Out Verilog	8-8

Appendix A. Examples

Count Zeros—Combinational Version.	A-2
Count Zeros—Sequential Version.	A-3
Drink Machine—State Machine Version	A-5
Drink Machine—Count Nickels Version	A-7
Carry-Lookahead Adder	A-8
Coding for Late-Arriving Signals	A-13
Datapath Duplication	A-13
Moving Late-Arriving Signals Closer to the Output	A-15
Overview.	A-16
Late-Arriving Data Signal	A-18
Recoding for Late-Arriving Data Signal: Case 1	A-19
Recoding for Late-Arriving Data Signal: Case 2	A-20
Late-Arriving Control Signal	A-23
Recoding for Late-Arriving Control Signal	A-24
Instantiation of Arrays of Instances	A-26
SR Latches	A-30
D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Use <code>async_set_reset</code>	A-31
Inferring Master-Slave Latches	A-31
Master-Slave Latch Overview	A-32
Master-Slave Latch With Single Master-Slave Clock Pair	A-32
Master-Slave Latch With Multiple Master-Slave Clock Pairs	A-33
Master-Slave Latch With Discrete Components	A-34
Inferring Flip-Flops	A-34
D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use <code>sync_set_reset</code>	A-35

JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset:	
Use sync_set_reset	A-36

Appendix B. Verilog Language Support

Syntax	B-2
Comments	B-2
Numbers	B-2
Verilog Keywords	B-3
Unsupported Verilog Language Constructs	B-5
Construct Restrictions and Comments	B-6
always Blocks	B-6
generate Statements	B-7
Generate Overview	B-7
Restrictions	B-7
Conditional Expressions (?:) Resource Sharing	B-7
Case	B-8
casez and casex	B-8
Full Case and Parallel Case	B-9
defparam	B-10
disable	B-10
Blocking and Nonblocking Assignments	B-11
Macromodule	B-12
inout Port Declaration	B-12
tri Data Type	B-13
Compiler Directives	B-13
`define	B-13
`include	B-14
`ifdef, `else, `endif, `ifndef, and `elsif	B-15
`rp_group and `rp_endgroup	B-16
`rp_place	B-16
`rp_fill	B-17
`rp_array_dir	B-18
rp_align	B-18
rp_orient	B-18
rp_ignore and rp_endignore	B-19
`undef	B-19
reg Types	B-19

Types in Busing	B-19
Combinational while Loops	B-20
Verilog 2001 Supported Constructs	B-24
Ignored Constructs	B-25
Simulation Directives	B-25
Verilog System Functions	B-26
Verilog 2001 Feature Examples	B-26
Multidimensional Arrays and Arrays of Nets	B-26
Signed Quantities	B-28
Comparisons With Signed Types	B-30
Controlling Signs With Casting Operators	B-31
Part-Select Addressing Operators ([+:] and [-:])	B-31
Variable Part-Select Overview	B-31
Example—Ascending Array and -:	B-32
Example—Ascending Array and +:	B-33
Example—Descending Array and -:	B-34
Example—Descending Array and +:	B-35
Power Operator (**)	B-36
Arithmetic Shift Operators (<<< and >>>)	B-36

Glossary

Index

Preface

This preface includes the following sections:

- [What's New in This Release](#)
- [About This Manual](#)
- [Customer Support](#)

What's New in This Release

Information about new features, enhancements, and changes, along with known problems, limitations, and resolved Synopsys Technical Action Requests (STARs), is available in the *HDL Compiler Release Notes* in SolvNet.

To see the *HDL Compiler Release Notes*,

1. Go to the Download Center on SolvNet located at the following address:

<https://solvnet.synopsys.com/DownloadCenter>

If prompted, enter your user name and password. If you do not have a Synopsys user name and password, follow the instructions to register with SolvNet.

2. Select HDL Compiler, then select a release in the list that appears.

About This Manual

HDL Compiler translates a Verilog hardware language description into a generic technology (GTECH) netlist that is used by the Design Compiler tool to create an optimized netlist. This manual describes the following:

- Modeling combinational logic, synchronous logic, three-state buffers, and multibit cells with HDL Compiler for Verilog
- Sharing resources
- Using directives in the RTL

Audience

The *HDL Compiler for Verilog User Guide* is written for logic designers and electronic engineers who are familiar with Design Compiler. Knowledge of the Verilog language is required, and knowledge of a high-level programming language is helpful.

Related Publications

For additional information about HDL Compiler, see Documentation on the Web, which is available through SolvNet at the following address:

<https://solvnet.synopsys.com/DocsOnWeb>

You might also want to refer to the documentation for the following related Synopsys products:

- Design Vision
- Design Compiler
- DesignWare
- Library Compiler
- Verilog Compiled Simulator (VCS)

Conventions

The following conventions are used in Synopsys documentation.

Convention	Description
Courier	Indicates command syntax.
<i>Courier italic</i>	Indicates a user-defined value in Synopsys syntax, such as <i>object_name</i> . (A user-defined value that is not Synopsys syntax, such as a user-defined value in a Verilog or VHDL statement, is indicated by regular text font italic.)
Courier bold	Indicates user input—text you type verbatim—in Synopsys syntax and examples. (User input that is not Synopsys syntax, such as a user name or password you enter in a GUI, is indicated by regular text font bold.)
[]	Denotes optional parameters, such as <i>pin1 [pin2 ... pinN]</i>
|	Indicates a choice among alternatives, such as <i>low | medium | high</i> (This example indicates that you can enter one of three possible values for an option: low, medium, or high.)
—	Connects terms that are read as a single term by the system, such as <i>set_annotated_delay</i>
Control-c	Indicates a keyboard combination, such as holding down the Control key and pressing c.
\	Indicates a continuation of a command line.
/	Indicates levels of directory structure.
Edit > Copy	Indicates a path to a menu command, such as opening the Edit menu and choosing Copy.

Customer Support

Customer support is available through SolvNet online customer support and through contacting the Synopsys Technical Support Center.

Accessing SolvNet

SolvNet includes an electronic knowledge base of technical articles and answers to frequently asked questions about Synopsys tools. SolvNet also gives you access to a wide range of Synopsys online services including software downloads, documentation on the Web, and “Enter a Call to the Support Center.”

To access SolvNet, go to the SolvNet Web page at the following address:

<https://solvnet.synopsys.com>.

If prompted, enter your user name and password. If you do not have a Synopsys user name and password, follow the instructions to register with SolvNet.

If you need help using SolvNet, click HELP in the top-right menu bar or in the footer.

Contacting the Synopsys Technical Support Center

If you have problems, questions, or suggestions, you can contact the Synopsys Technical Support Center in the following ways:

- Open a call to your local support center from the Web by going to <https://solvnet.synopsys.com> (Synopsys user name and password required), then clicking “Enter a Call to the Support Center.”
- Send an e-mail message to your local support center.
 - E-mail support_center@synopsys.com from within North America.
 - Find other local support center e-mail addresses at <http://www.synopsys.com/Support/GlobalSupportCenters/Pages>
- Telephone your local support center.
 - Call (800) 245-8005 from within the continental United States.
 - Call (650) 584-4200 from Canada.
 - Find other local support center telephone numbers at <http://www.synopsys.com/Support/GlobalSupportCenters/Pages>

1

Introduction to HDL Compiler for Verilog

The Synopsys Design Compiler tool uses the HDL Compiler tool to read designs written in the Verilog hardware description language.

Note:

This manual uses the default tool command language (Tcl) standard for most examples and discussion.

This chapter introduces the main concepts and capabilities of HDL Compiler. It includes the following sections:

- [Reading Verilog Designs](#)
- [Elaboration Reports](#)
- [Reporting Elaboration Errors](#)
- [Netlist Reader](#)
- [Automatic Detection of Input Type](#)
- [Reading Commands Summary](#)
- [Defining Macros](#)
- [Parameterized Designs](#)
- [Reading Large Designs](#)
- [Use of \\$display During RTL Elaboration](#)

- [Inputs and Outputs](#)
- [Language Construct Support](#)
- [Licenses](#)

Reading Verilog Designs

Design Compiler uses HDL Compiler to read in Verilog designs. When HDL Compiler reads a design, it checks the code for correct syntax and builds a generic technology (GTECH) netlist that Design Compiler uses to optimize the design. You can use the `read_verilog` command to do both functions automatically, or you can use the `analyze` and `elaborate` commands to do each function separately. You can use either command unless you have parameterized designs; for these designs, you need to use `elaborate` to specify parameter values. See [“Parameterized Designs” on page 1-20](#).

For Verilog gate-level netlists, HDL Compiler automatically detects if your design is a netlist and uses a specialized netlist reader to read in your design. See [“Automatic Detection of Input Type” on page 1-17](#).

HDL Compiler supports automatic linking of mixed language libraries. In Verilog, the default library is the work directory, and you cannot have multiple libraries. In VHDL, however, you can have multiple design libraries.

Reading Designs With Dependencies Automatically

HDL Compiler analyzes and can elaborate designs and any files dependent on them in the correct order automatically when you use the `-autoread` option with the `analyze` or `read_file` commands. The `-autoread` option reads in the source files of a design, analyzes them, and, when you use the `read_file` command, it elaborates the design starting at the specified top-level design. It retains the resulting GTECH representation in memory. During sequential `analyze -autoread` and `read_file -autoread` calls, HDL Compiler analyzes and elaborates only the files that were changed and the files that depend on them. The `-autoread` option is cross language compatible.

You can specify the `-autoread` option with the `read_file` command or the `analyze` command. Specifying `read_file -autoread` elaborates the top design, while specifying `analyze -autoread` does not perform elaboration. The following sections describe how to use the `-autoread` option. The sections also highlight required and recommended arguments and variables. For a complete list of options, see the `read_file` and `analyze` man pages.

Reading, Analyzing, and Elaborating Designs

To automatically read a file with dependencies, analyze the files, and elaborate the design starting at the specified top-level design, enter the following command at the tool prompt:

```
dc_shell> read_file -autoread file_or_dir_list -top design_name
```

You must specify the *file_or_dir_list* argument, which lists the files to be analyzed. The *-autoread* option locates the source files by expanding each file or directory in the *file_or_dir_list* list. You must specify the *-top design_name* argument, which identifies the top design.

You can exclude a file by specifying the *-exclude* argument or the *hdlin_autoread_exclude_extensions* variable. For more information about the *hdlin_autoread_exclude_extensions* variable, see [“Supported Variables” on page 1-4](#).

If a directory is used as an argument, the *-autoread* option collects the files from the directory, and, if you specify the *-recursive* option, it also collects the files from its subdirectories. The option then infers which files are RTL source files based on the file extension. If you specify the *-format* option, only files with the specified extensions for that format are collected. The default file extensions for VHDL are *.vhd* and *.vhdl* and the default extension for Verilog is *.v*.

Reading and Analyzing Designs Without Elaboration

To automatically read a file with dependencies and analyze the files without elaborating the design, enter the following command at the tool prompt:

```
dc_shell> analyze -autoread file_or_dir_list -top design_name
```

You must specify the *file_or_dir_list* argument, which lists the files to be analyzed. The *-autoread* option locates the source files by expanding each file or directory in the *file_or_dir_list* list. The *-top* option is not required. If you specify *-top*, HDL Compiler analyzes only the RTL source files that the top design depends on. If you do not specify *-top*, HDL Compiler analyzes all the RTL source files that the *-autoread* option finds.

You can exclude a file by specifying the *-exclude* argument or the *hdlin_autoread_exclude_extensions* variable. For more information about the *hdlin_autoread_exclude_extensions* variable, see [“Supported Variables” on page 1-4](#).

If a directory is used as an argument, the *-autoread* option collects the files from the directory, and, if you specify the *-recursive* option, it also collects the files from its subdirectories. The option then infers which files are RTL source files based on the file extension. If you specify the *-format* option, only files with the specified extensions for that format are collected. The default file extensions for VHDL are *.vhd* and *.vhdl* and the default extension for Verilog is *.v*.

File Dependency Support

A dependency occurs when a file, for example file A, requires or uses language constructs that were defined in another file, for example file B. When you use the `-autoread` option, HDL Compiler automatically analyzes and, when you use the `read_file` command, elaborates the files with the following dependencies in the correct order:

- *Analyze dependency*

If file B defines entity E in VHDL and file A defines the architecture of entity E, file A depends on file B. Therefore, file A must be analyzed after file B. This is known as an analyze dependency. Entity and architecture definitions are exclusive language constructions of VHDL. They do not exist in Verilog.

- *Link dependency*

If module X creates instances of module Y in Verilog, there is no need to analyze them in a specific order. However, both must have been analyzed before elaborating and linking the design. Otherwise, the missing module is considered a black box. This is known as a link dependency. This is an exclusive language construction of Verilog. It does not exist in VHDL.

- *Include dependency*

If a file X defines a macro that is used in file Y in Verilog, then file X and file Y must be analyzed in the same unit of compilation and in that order, meaning that they must be included with the same `analyze` command. The effect is the same as having included file X in file Y. This is known as an include dependency. This is an exclusive language construction of Verilog. It does not exist in VHDL.

HDL Compiler detects Verilog macro usage and definition and reorders files to ensure that they are analyzed in the correct order. However, this is not always possible, for example when a macro is defined several times in different files.

Supported Variables

The following variables are available for the `-autoread` option for Verilog:

- `hdlin_autoread_exclude_extensions`

Defines which files to exclude from the analyze process, based on the file extension.

- `hdlin_autoread_verilog_extensions`

Defines which files to infer as Verilog files, based on the file extension. The default file extension for Verilog is `.v`.

- `hdlin_autoread_vhdl_extensions`

Defines which files to infer as VHDL files, based on the file extension. The default file extensions for VHDL are `.vhd` and `.vhdl`.

Examples

In the following example, the current directory is the source directory. HDL Compiler reads the source files, analyzes them, and elaborates the design starting at the specified top-level design:

```
dc_shell> read_file {.} -autoread -recursive -top E1
```

The following example specifies extensions for Verilog files that are different than the default (.v) and sets the `-source` list and the exclude list. Lastly, it runs `read_file -autoread`, specifying the top-level design. HDL Compiler includes only files with Verilog extensions.

```
dc_shell> set hdlin_autoread_verilog_extensions {.ve .VE}
dc_shell> set my_sources {mod1/src mod2/src}
dc_shell> set my_excludes {mod1/src/incl_dir/ mod2/src/incl_dir/}
dc_shell> read_file $my_sources -recursive -exclude $my_excludes -autoread \
    -f verilog -top TOP
```

Note that excluding directories explicitly is useful if files inside those directories have the same extensions as the source files but you do not want HDL Compiler to use them.

Automatic Detection of RTL Language From File Extensions

You can specify a file format with the `read_file` command by using the `-format` option. If you do not specify a format, `read_file` infers the format based on the file extension. If the file extension is unknown, the format is assumed to be .ddc. The file extensions in [Table 1-1](#) are supported for automatic inference:

Table 1-1 Supported File Extensions for Automatic Inference

Format	File extensions
ddc	.ddc
db	.db, .sldb, .sdb, .db.gz, .sldb.gz, .sdb.gz
Verilog	.v, .verilog, .v.gz, .verilog.gz

The supported extensions are not case sensitive. All formats except .ddc can be compressed in gzip (.gz) format.

If you specify a file format that is not supported, Design Compiler generates an error message. For example, if you specify `read_file test.vlog`, Design Compiler issues the following DDC-2 error message:

```
Error: Unable to open file 'test.vlog' for reading. (DDC-2)
```

Controlling the Verilog Version Used for Reading RTL Files

The `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable controls the Verilog language version that is used when reading RTL files. The valid values for the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable are 1995 and 2001, corresponding to the 1995 and 2001 Verilog LRM releases. When you set the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable to 1995 or 2001, that version of the Verilog LRM features is enabled when you specify the `analyze` command or the `read_verilog` command. By default, the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable is set to 2001.

Previously, the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable also specified the SystemVerilog language version. To control the SystemVerilog language version that is used when reading RTL files, use the `hdlin_sverilog_std` variable. The valid values for the `hdlin_sverilog_std` variable are 2005 and 2009, corresponding to the 2005 and 2009 SystemVerilog LRM releases. When you set the `hdlin_sverilog_std` variable to 2005 or 2009, that version of the SystemVerilog LRM features is enabled when you specify the `analyze -f sverilog` command or the `read_sverilog` command. By default, the `hdlin_sverilog_std` variable is set to 2005.

Elaboration Reports

You can control the type and the amount of information that is included in elaboration reports by setting the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable to `basic`, `comprehensive`, `verbose`, or `none`. [Table 1-2](#) shows what is included in the report based on each setting. In the table, `true` indicates that the information will be included in the report, `false` indicates that it will not be included in the report, and `verbose` indicates that the report will include detailed information. If you do not specify a setting, `hdlin_reporting_level` is set to `basic` by default.

Table 1-2 Basic hdlin_reporting_level Variable Settings

Information included in report	none	basic	comprehensive	verbose
<code>floating_net_to_ground</code> Reports the floating net to ground connections.	false	false	true	true
<code>fsm</code> Prints a report of inferred state variables.	false	false	true	true
<code>inferred_modules</code> Prints a report of inferred sequential elements.	false	true	true	verbose

Table 1-2 Basic hdlin_reporting_level Variable Settings (Continued)

Information included in report	none	basic	comprehensive	verbose
<code>mux_op</code> Prints a report of MUX_OPs.	false	true	true	true
<code>syn_cell</code> Prints a report of synthetic cells.	false	false	true	true
<code>tri_state</code> Prints a report of inferred three-state elements.	false	true	true	true

In addition to the basic settings, you can also specify the add (+) or subtract (-) options to customize a report. For example, if you want a report to include floating net-to-ground connections, synthetic cells, inferred state variables, and verbose information for inferred sequential elements, but you do not want to include MUX_OPs or inferred three-state elements, you can set the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable to the following setting:

```
set hdlin_reporting_level verbose-mux_op-tri_state
```

As another example, if you set the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable to the following setting,

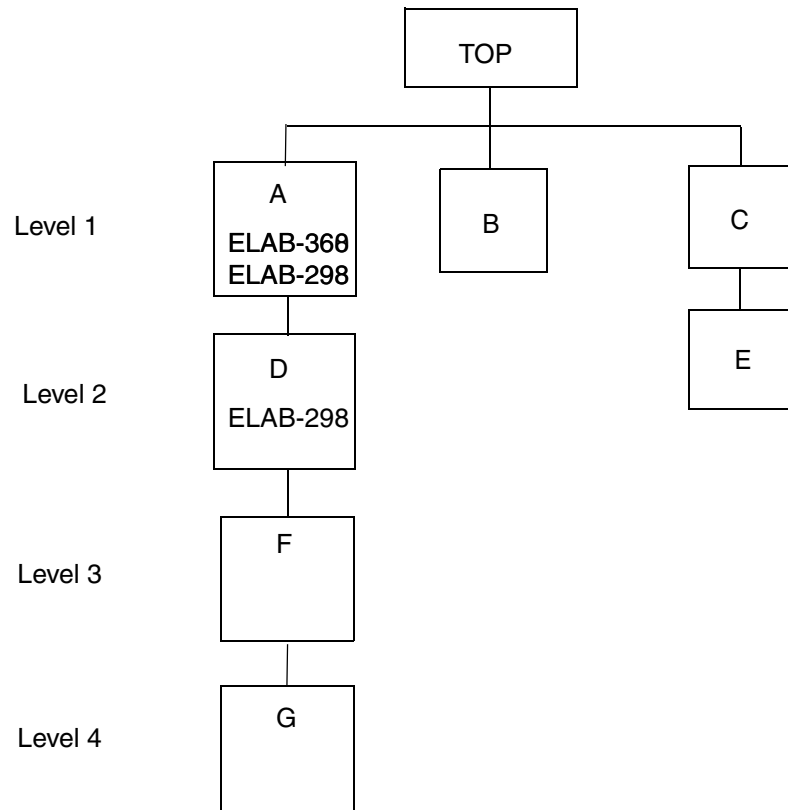
```
set hdlin_reporting_level basic+floating_net_to_ground+syn_cell+fsm
```

HDL Compiler issues a report that is equivalent to `set hdlin_reporting_level comprehensive`, meaning that the elaboration report will include comprehensive information for all the information listed in [Table 1-2 on page 1-6](#).

Reporting Elaboration Errors

HDL Compiler elaborates designs in a top-down hierarchical order. The elaboration failure of a top-level module prohibits the elaboration of all associated submodules. The `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable allows the elaboration of submodules even if the top-level module elaboration fails, enabling HDL Compiler to report more elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors and warnings in a hierarchical design during the first elaboration run.

To understand how this variable works, consider the four-level hierarchical design in [Figure 1-1](#). This design has elaboration (ELAB) errors as noted in the figure.

Figure 1-1 Hierarchical Design

Under default conditions, when you elaborate the design, HDL Compiler only reports the errors in the first-level (ELAB-368 and ELAB-298 in module A). To find the second-level error (ELAB-298 in submodule D), you need to fix the first-level errors and elaborate again.

When you use the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable, you only need to elaborate once to find the errors in A and the submodule D.

This section describes the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable and provides methodology, examples, and a list of frequently asked questions (FAQ) in the following subsections:

- [Methodology](#)
- [Example](#)
- [hdlin_elab_errors_deep FAQs](#)

Methodology

Use the following methodology to enable HDL Compiler to report elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors across the hierarchy during a single elaboration run.

1. Identify and fix all syntax errors in the design.
2. Set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true.

When you set this variable to true, HDL Compiler reports the following:

```
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
```

Important:

HDL Compiler does not create designs when you set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true. The tool reports warnings if you try to use commands that require a design. For example, if you run `list_design`, the tool reports the message “Warning: No designs to list. (UID-275).”

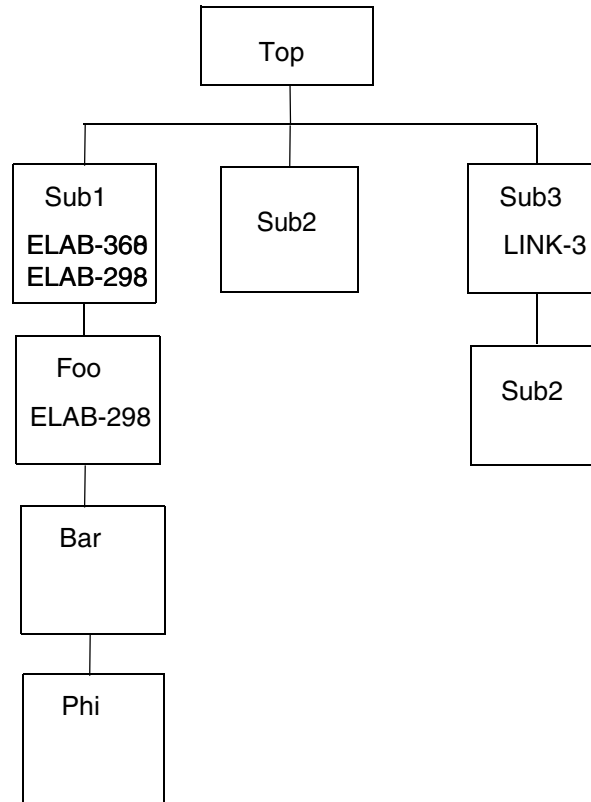
3. Elaborate your design using the `elaborate` command.
4. Fix any elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors. Review the warnings and fix as needed.
5. Set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to false.
6. Elaborate your error-free design.
7. Proceed with your normal synthesis flow.

The next section provides examples showing HDL Compiler reporting all errors across the hierarchy, which reduces the need for multiple elaboration runs.

Example

This example uses a hierarchical Verilog design to demonstrate how the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable enables HDL Compiler to report errors across a design hierarchy in a single elaboration run. Each design is read under default conditions (`hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is false) and with `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` set to true. Session logs provide the error reports.

This section uses a Verilog design to show HDL Compiler's hierarchical error reporting capability, which is made available through the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable. [Figure 1-2](#) shows the block diagram for the Verilog design Top; [Example 1-1](#) shows the RTL code. The design errors are noted in the figure.

Figure 1-2 Hierarchical Design**Example 1-1 Verilog RTL for Design Top**

```

module top (clk, a, b, c, out, small_bus);
  parameter SMALL = 8;
  input clk, a, b;
  output c, out;
  output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;

  sub1 sub1_inst (clk, a, b, c, out, small_bus);
  sub2 sub2_inst (a, b, c);
  sub3 sub3_inst(a, b, c);

endmodule

module sub1 (clk, a, b, c, out, small_bus);
  parameter SMALL = 8;
  input clk, a, b;
  output c, out;
  output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;
  wire [1:0] r;

```

```

    wire temp;

    assign temp = c & out;
    assign temp = 1'b1;      // ELAB-368 error
    assign a = r[2];        // ELAB-298 error

    foo foo_inst (a, b, c, small_bus, clk);

endmodule


module foo (a, b, c, small_bus, clk);
    parameter SMALL = 8;
    input a, b, clk;
    output c;
    output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;
    wire [1:0] r;
    assign c = r[3];        // ELAB-298 error
    assign c = a & b;
    bar bar_inst (a, b, c, small_bus);

endmodule


module bar (a, b, c, small_bus);
    parameter SMALL = 8;
    input  a, b;
    output [SMALL-1:0] small_bus;
    output  c;
    phi #(SMALL) phi_ok(small_bus);
    assign c = ~b;
endmodule

module phi(addr_bus);
    parameter SIZE = 1024;
    output [SIZE-1:0] addr_bus;
    assign addr_bus = 'b1;
endmodule // phi


module sub2 (a, b, c);
    input a, b;
    output c;
    assign c = a ^ b;
endmodule


module sub3 (a, b, c);
    input [3:0] a;
    input [3:0] b;
    output [3:0] c;
    assign c = a | b;
    sub2 sub2(a[2], b[3], c[0]); //LINK-3 error for a, b, c
endmodule // sub3

```

When you elaborate design Top with `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` set to false, the default behavior, HDL Compiler reports first-level errors (ELAB-368 and ELAB-298 in sub1 and LINK-3 in sub3) but does not report the ELAB-298 error in submodule foo. [Example 1-2](#) shows the session log.

Example 1-2

```

Initializing...
Initializing gui preferences from file  /.../.synopsys_dv_prefs.tcl
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog test.v
Running PRESTO HDLC
Searching for ./test.v
Compiling source file ./test.v
Warning:  ./test.v:22: Port a of type input is being assigned.
(VER-1005)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Loading db file '/.../libraries/syn/lsi_10k.db'
1
dc_shell> elaborate top
Loading db file '/.../libraries/syn/gtech.db'
Loading db file '/.../libraries/syn/standard.sldb'
  Loading link library 'lsi_10k'
  Loading link library 'gtech'
Running PRESTO HDLC
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Elaborated 1 design.
Current design is now 'top'.
Information: Building the design 'sub1'. (HDL-193)
Error:  ./test.v:21: Net 'temp', or a directly connected net, is driven
by more than
one
source, and at least on
e source is a constant net. (ELAB-368)
Error:  ./test.v:22: Array index out of bounds r[2], valid bounds are
[1:0].
(ELAB-298)
*** Presto compilation terminated with 2 errors. ***
Information: Building the design 'sub2'. (HDL-193)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'sub3'. (HDL-193)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Error: Width mismatch on port 'a' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'b' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'c' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Warning: Design 'top' has '1' unresolved references. For more detailed
information,
use
the "link" command. (UID-341)
1
dc_shell> current_design

```

```

Current design is 'top'.
{top}
dc_shell> list_designs
sub2      sub3      top (*)
1

```

When you elaborate design Top with `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` set to true, HDL Compiler reports errors across the hierarchy, as shown in [Example 1-3](#).

Important:

HDL Compiler does not create designs when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is set to true. If you run `list_design`, HDL Compiler reports
 “Warning: No designs to list. (UID-275).”

Example 1-3

```

Initializing...
Initializing gui preferences from file  /.../.synopsys_dv_prefs.tcl
dc_shell> set hdlin_elab_errors_deep TRUE
TRUE
dc_shell> analyze -f verilog test.v
Running PRESTO HDLC
Searching for ./test.v
Compiling source file ./test.v
Warning:  ./test.v:22: Port a of type input is being assigned.
(VER-1005)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Loading db file '/.../libraries/syn/lsi_10k.db'
1
dc_shell> elaborate top
Loading db file '/.../libraries/syn/gtech.db'
Loading db file '/.../libraries/syn/standard.sldb'
  Loading link library 'lsi_10k'
  Loading link library 'gtech'
Running PRESTO HDLC
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Elaborated 1 design.
Current design is now 'top'.
Information: Building the design 'sub1'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Error:  ./test.v:21: Net 'temp', or a directly connected net, is driven
by more than
one
source, and at least one source is a constant net. (ELAB-368)
Error:  ./test.v:22: Array index out of bounds r[2], valid bounds are
[1:0].
(ELAB-298)
*** Presto compilation terminated with 2 errors. ***
Information: Building the design 'sub2'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'sub3'. (HDL-193)

```

```

*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Error: Width mismatch on port 'a' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'b' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Error: Width mismatch on port 'c' of reference to 'sub3' in 'top'.
(LINK-3)
Information: Building the design 'foo'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Error: ./test.v:32: Array index out of bounds r[3], valid bounds are
[1:0].
(ELAB-298)
*** Presto compilation terminated with 1 errors. ***
Information: Building the design 'bar'. (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'phi' instantiated from design 'bar'
with
    the parameters "8". (HDL-193)
*** Presto compilation run in rtl debug mode. ***
Presto compilation completed successfully.
1
dc_shell> current_design
Error: Current design is not defined. (UID-4)
dc_shell> list_designs
Warning: No designs to list. (UID-275)
0

```

The `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable is designed to save you time in finding design elaboration and linking errors. For the Verilog design Top, under default conditions, only the top-level errors are identified:

- ELAB-368 and ELAB-298 in sub1
- LINK-3 in sub3

To find the ELAB-298 error in submodule foo, you need to fix all the errors in sub1 and elaborate again. However, if you set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true, all errors across the hierarchy are identified in one elaboration run. HDL Compiler reports

- ELAB-368 and ELAB-298 in sub1
- LINK-3 in sub3
- ELAB-298 in submodule foo

hdlin_elab_errors_deep FAQs

1. Why should I use the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable?

This variable enables HDL Compiler to report elaboration, linking, and VER-37 errors and warnings across hierarchical designs in a single elaboration run.

2. Why isn't the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable set to true by default?

If the variable were true by default, no designs could be saved. To prevent designs with errors from being propagated, HDL Compiler does not save designs when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is set to true.

3. Why can't HDL Compiler save only the designs that don't have errors when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is set to true?

When `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is set to true, HDL Compiler elaborates lower-level designs even if the top-level design has errors. Occasionally, errors in the top level cause lower-level errors that are not reported; the lower-level appears to be error free, but isn't.

4. What types of errors does `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` report?

ELAB errors and warnings, LINK errors and warnings, and the VER-37 internal error.

5. How does HDL Compiler handle parameterized designs that do not have parameters specified?

HDL Compiler reports these as errors during `analyze`.

6. Why do I have to fix my syntax errors before elaborating?

After doing `analyze`, HDL Compiler creates an intermediate design that the `elaborate` command uses to elaborate the design. This intermediate file is created only after all syntax errors are fixed. If you do not fix all the syntax errors, there is no intermediate file to elaborate.

7. I want to use the `read_file` command. What happens if I set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true and use `read_file`?

The `read_file` is not supported for use with `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` because The `read_file` command does not include the functionality of the `link` command. The `elaborate` command includes the functionality of the `link` command. The `read_file` command does not allow command-line parameter specification; the `elaborate` command allows this.

8. How much longer does elaboration take when I set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true?

There is a very small increase in elaboration time.

9. Does capacity drop when I set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true? Is there a recommended number of errors I can tell HDL Compiler to stop at? If I have lots of errors, will it hang?

No noticeable difference in performance has been observed.

10. Can I compile when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is true?

No design is created when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is true. Even if the design appears to be error free, no design will be created. You cannot compile because there is no design to compile.

11. When `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is true, will all errors be valid?

In most cases, all reported errors are valid.

12. The `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` command seems like a very helpful feature. Why didn't you do it earlier?

Designs are getting bigger and to accommodate these larger designs, more hierarchy is being created. Thus the need for the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` command developed over time.

13. Can I use the `-clock_gate` option with the elaborate command when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is true?

No. You cannot create clock gating with the elaborate `-clock_gating` command. The tool will error out.

14. Can I get incorrect logic when using `hdlin_elab_errors_deep`?

No, because a design is not created.

15. Is `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` a lint tool?

No, HDL Compiler does not include a lint tool. The Design Compiler tool provides the `check_design` command, which provides the lint function.

16. What happens if I set `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true and analyze a design with syntax errors?

The syntax errors are reported (same as default behavior).

17. What happens when I have multiple instances of erroneous designs when `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` is true?

There is no behavior change. HDL Compiler reports ELAB errors when elaborating the design (module declaration), not the instantiation. The error messages do not get multiplied by the number of instances. This is the same as the default behavior.

18. Does HDL Compiler report all syntax errors when I use the `analyze` command? Are all syntax errors reported at once, or do I need to do multiple `analyze` commands?

One `analyze` command reports all the syntax errors.

19. What happens if I read in some designs and later set the `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` variable to true?

Previously read in designs will still be in memory, but it is better to remove the designs before setting `hdlin_elab_errors_deep` to true.

Netlist Reader

Design Compiler contains a specialized reader for gate-level Verilog netlists that has higher capacity on designs that do not use RTL-level constructs, but it does not support the entire Verilog language. The specialized netlist reader reads netlists faster and uses less memory than HDL Compiler.

If you have problems reading a netlist with the netlist reader, try reading it with HDL Compiler by using `read_verilog -rtl` or by specifying `read_file -format verilog -rtl`.

Automatic Detection of Input Type

By default, when you read in a Verilog gate-level netlist, HDL Compiler determines that your design is a netlist and runs the specialized netlist reader.

Important:

For best memory usage and runtime, do not mix RTL and netlist designs into a single read. The automatic detector chooses one reader—netlist or RTL—to read all files included in the command. Mixed files default to the RTL reader, because it can read both types; the netlist reader can read only netlists.

The following variables apply only to HDL Compiler and are not implemented by the netlist reader:

- `power_preserve_rtl_hier_names` (default is false)
- `hdlin_auto_save_templates` (default is false)

If you set either of these variables to true (the nondefault value), automatic netlist detection is disabled and you must use the `-netlist` option to enable the netlist reader.

Reading Commands Summary

The recommended and alternative reading commands are summarized in [Table 1-3](#).

Table 1-3 Reading Commands

Type of input	Reading method
RTL	<p>For parameterized designs,</p> <pre>analyze -format verilog { files } elaborate <topdesign></pre> <p>is preferred because it does a recursive elaboration of the entire design and lets you pass parameter values to the elaboration. The read method conditionally elaborates all designs with the default parameters.</p> <p>To enable macro definition from the read, use</p> <pre>read_file -format verilog { files }</pre> <p>Alternative reading methods:</p> <pre>read_verilog -rtl { files } read_file -format verilog -rtl { files }</pre>
Gate-level netlists	<p>Recommended reading method:</p> <pre>read_verilog { files }</pre> <p>Alternative reading methods:</p> <pre>read_verilog -netlist { files } read_file -format verilog -netlist { files }</pre>

Defining Macros

HDL Compiler provides the following support for macro definition.

Using analyze -define

When using -define with multiple analyze commands, you must remove any designs in memory before re-analyzing the design. To remove the designs, use the `remove_design -all` command.

Because elaborated designs in memory have no timestamps, the tool cannot determine if the analyzed file that the elaborated design is based on has been updated or not. The tool may assume that the previously elaborated (out-of-date) design is up-to-date and reuse it.

Predefined Macros

HDL Compiler predefines the following macros:

- **SYNTHESIS**—Used to specify simulation-only code, as shown in [Example 1-4](#).

Example 1-4 Using *SYNTHESIS* and *`ifndef ... `endif* Constructs

```
module dff_async (RESET, SET, DATA, Q, CLK);
  input CLK;
  input RESET, SET, DATA;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  // synopsys one_hot "RESET, SET"

  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET or posedge SET)
    if (RESET)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else if (SET)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else Q <= DATA;
    `ifndef SYNTHESIS
      always @ (RESET or SET)
        if (RESET + SET > 1)
          $write ("ONE-HOT violation for RESET and SET.");
    `endif
endmodule
```

In this example, the **SYNTHESIS** macro and the *`ifndef ... `endif* constructs enclose the simulation-only code that checks if reset and set are asserted at the same time. The main **always** block is both simulated and synthesized; the block that checks—at simulation time—if what the designer assumed to be true is actually true, is wrapped in the *`ifndef ... `endif* constructs.

- **VERILOG_1995**—For running without the Verilog 2001 features.
- **VERILOG_2001**—For running the conditional inclusion of Verilog 2001 features. Supported Verilog 2001 features are listed in [“Verilog 2001 Supported Constructs” on page B-24](#). To disable Verilog 2001 features, set `hdlin_vrlg_std` to 1995; the default is 2001, which enables Verilog 2001 features.

Global Macro Reset: ``undefineall`

The ``undefineall` directive is a global reset for all macros that causes all the macros defined earlier in the source file to be reset to undefined.

Parameterized Designs

There are two ways to build parameterized designs. One method instantiates them, as shown in [Example 1-5](#).

Example 1-5 Instantiating a Parameterized Design

```
module param (a,b,c);  
  
    input [3:0] a,b;  
    output [3:0] c;  
  
    foo #(4,5,4+6) U1(a,b,c); // instantiate foo  
  
endmodule
```

In [Example 1-5](#), the code instantiates the parameterized design `foo`, which has three parameters. The first parameter is assigned the value 4, the second parameter is assigned the value 5, and the third parameter takes the value 10.

The second method builds a parameterized design with the `elaborate` command. The syntax of the command is

```
elaborate template_name -parameters parameter_list
```

The syntax of the parameter specifications includes strings, integers, and constants using the following formats ``b`, ``h`, `b` and `h`.

You can store parameterized designs in user-specified design libraries. For example,

```
analyze -format verilog n-register.v -library mylib
```

This command stores the analyzed results of the design contained in file `n-register.v` in a user-specified design library, `mylib`.

To verify that a design is stored in memory, use the `report_design_lib work` command. The `report_design_lib` command lists designs that reside in the indicated design library.

When a design is built from a template, only the parameters you indicate when you instantiate the parameterized design are used in the template name. For example, suppose the template `ADD` has parameters `N`, `M`, and `Z`. You can build a design where `N = 8`, `M = 6`,

and Z is left at its default value. The name assigned to this design is `ADD_N8_M6`. If no parameters are listed, the template is built with default values, and the name of the created design is the same as the name of the template. If no default parameters are provided, an error occurs.

The model in [Example 1-6](#) uses a parameter to determine the register bit-width; the default width is declared as 8.

Example 1-6 Register Model

```
module DFF ( in1, clk, out1 );
  parameter SIZE = 8;
  input [SIZE-1:0] in1;
  input clk;
  output [SIZE-1:0] out1;
  reg [SIZE-1:0] out1;
  reg [SIZE-1:0] tmp;

  always @(clk)
    if (clk == 0)
      tmp = in1;
    else //(clk == 1)
      out1 <= tmp;
endmodule
```

If you want an instance of the register model to have a bit-width of 16, use the `elaborate` command to specify this as follows:

```
elaborate DFF -param SIZE=16
```

The `list_designs` command shows the design, as follows:

```
DFF_SIZE16 (*)
```

Using the `read_verilog` command to build a design with parameters is not recommended because you can build a design only with the default value of the parameters.

You also need to either set the `hdlin_auto_save_templates` variable to true or insert the `template` directive in the module, as follows:

```
module DFF ( in1, clk, out1 );
  parameter SIZE = 8;
  input [SIZE-1:0] in1;
  input clk;
  output [SIZE-1:0] out1;
  // synopsys template
  ...
```

The following three variables control the naming convention for templates:

`hdlin_template_naming_style`, `hdlin_template_parameter_style`, and `hdlin_template_separator_style`. For details, see [Chapter 8, “HDL Compiler Variables](#).

Reading Large Designs

To easily read designs containing several HDL source files and libraries, use the `analyze` command with the `-vcs` option. VCS-style `analyze` provides better compatibility with VCS command options and makes it easier to read in large designs. This feature enables automatic resolution of instantiated designs by searching for the referenced designs in user-specified libraries and then loading these designs. Use the following options with `-vcs`:

```
[ -sverilog | -verilog ]
[ -y <directory_path> ]
[ +libext+<extension1>+... ]
[ -v <library_file> ]
[ -f <command_file> ]
[ +define+<macro_name>+... ]
[ +incdir+<directory_path>+... ]
```

For example, to read in a design containing Verilog modules and SystemVerilog modules and interfaces, execute the following commands:

```
analyze -vcs "-verilog -y mylibdir1 +libext+.v -v myfile1
+incdir+myincludedir1
-f mycmdfile2" top.v
analyze -vcs "-sverilog -y ./mylibdir2 +libext+.sv -v ./myfile2
+define+SYNOPSIS "
top.sv

elaborate top
```

Limitations:

When using the `analyze -vcs` feature, you need to be aware of the following limitations:

1. Language elements other than modules, such as interfaces and structures, cannot be picked up from libraries or files using the `-y` and `-v` options.
2. A macro can be defined, but a value cannot be assigned to it. The value definition with `+define` is not supported.

These options follow the VCS command line syntax. For more details, see the VCS documentation and the `analyze` man page.

Use of \$display During RTL Elaboration

The \$display system task is usually used to report simulation progress. In synthesis, HDL Compiler executes \$display calls as it sees them and executes all the display statements on all the paths through the program as it elaborates the design. It usually cannot tell the value of variables, except compile-time constants like loop iteration counters.

Note that because HDL Compiler executes all \$display calls, error messages from the Verilog source can be executed and can look like unexpected messages.

Using \$display is useful for printing out any compile-time computations on parameters or the number of times a loop executes. A \$display example follows:

```
module F (in, out, clk);
    parameter SIZE = 1;
    input [SIZE-1: 0] in;
    output [SIZE-1: 0] out;
    reg [SIZE-1: 0] out;
    input clk;
    // ...
    `ifdef SYNTHESIS
        always $display("Instantiating F, SIZE=%d", SIZE);
    `endif
endmodule

module TOP (in, out, clk);
    input [33:0] in;
    output [33:0] out;
    input clk;

    F #( 2)  F2 (in[ 1:0] ,out[ 1:0], clk);
    F #(32) F32 (in[33:2], out[33:2], clk);
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler reports the following during elaboration:

```
dc_shell> elaborate TOP
Running PRESTO HDLC
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Elaborated 1 design.
Current design is now 'TOP'.
Information: Building the design 'F' instantiated from design 'TOP' with
             the parameters "2". (HDL-193)
$display output: Instantiating F, SIZE=2
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Information: Building the design 'F' instantiated from design 'TOP' with
             the parameters "32". (HDL-193)
$display output: Instantiating F, SIZE=32
Presto compilation completed successfully.
```

Inputs and Outputs

This section contains the following topics:

- [Input Descriptions](#)
- [Design Hierarchy](#)
- [Component Inference and Instantiation](#)
- [Naming Considerations](#)
- [Generic Netlists](#)
- [Inference Reports](#)
- [Error Messages](#)

Input Descriptions

Verilog code input to HDL Compiler can contain both structural and functional (RTL) descriptions. A Verilog structural description can define a range of hierarchical and gate-level constructs, including module definitions, module instantiations, and netlist connections.

The functional elements of a Verilog description for synthesis include

- always statements
- Tasks and functions
- Assignments
 - Continuous—are outside always blocks
 - Procedural—are inside always blocks and can be either blocking or nonblocking
- Sequential blocks (statements between a begin and an end)
- Control statements
- Loops—for, while, forever

The forever loop is only supported if it has an associated disable condition, making the exit condition deterministic.

- case and if statements

Functional and structural descriptions can be used in the same module, as shown in [Example 1-7](#).

In this example, the `detect_logic` function determines whether the input bit is a 0 or a 1. After making this determination, `detect_logic` sets `ns` to the next state of the machine. An `always` block infers flip-flops to hold the state information between clock cycles. These statements use a functional description style. A structural description style is used to instantiate the three-state buffer `t1`.

Example 1-7 Mixed Structural and Functional Descriptions

```
// This finite state machine (Mealy type) reads one
// bit per clock cycle and detects three or more
// consecutive 1s.
module three_ones( signal, clock, detect, output_enable );
  input signal, clock, output_enable;
  output detect;
  // Declare current state and next state variables.
  reg [1:0] cs;
  reg [1:0] ns;
  wire ungated_detect;
  // Declare the symbolic names for states.
  parameter NO_ONES = 0, ONE_ONE = 1,
            TWO_ONES = 2, AT_LEAST_THREE_ONES = 3;
  // ***** STRUCTURAL DESCRIPTION *****
  // Instance of a three-state gate that enables output
  three_state t1 (ungated_detect, output_enable, detect);

  // ***** FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION *****
  // always block infers flip-flops to hold the state of
  // the FSM.
  always @ ( posedge clock ) begin
    cs = ns;
  end
  // Combinational function
  function detect_logic;
    input [1:0] cs;
    input signal;

    begin
      detect_logic = 0;    //default value
      if ( signal == 0 )   //bit is zero
        ns = NO_ONES;
      else                 //bit is one, increment state
        case (cs)
          NO_ONES: ns = ONE_ONE;
          ONE_ONE: ns = TWO_ONES;
          TWO_ONES, AT_LEAST_THREE_ONES:
            begin
              ns = AT_LEAST_THREE_ONES;
              detect_logic = 1;
            end
        endcase
    end
  endfunction
  assign ungated_detect = detect_logic( cs, signal );
endmodule
```

Design Hierarchy

HDL Compiler maintains the hierarchical boundaries you define when you use structural Verilog. These boundaries have two major effects:

- Each module specified in your HDL description is synthesized separately and maintained as a distinct design. The constraints for the design are maintained, and each module can be optimized separately in Design Compiler.
- Module instantiations within HDL descriptions are maintained during input. The instance name you assign to user-defined components is carried through to the gate-level implementation.

Note:

HDL Compiler does not automatically create the hierarchy for other, nonstructural Verilog constructs such as blocks, loops, functions, and tasks. These elements of an HDL description are translated in the context of their design. After reading in a Verilog design, you can use the `group -hdl_block` command to group the gates in a block, function, or task. HDL Compiler supports only the top-level always block. For information on how to use the `group` command with Verilog designs, see the man page.

Component Inference and Instantiation

There are two ways to define components in your Verilog description:

- You can directly instantiate registers into a Verilog description, selecting from any element in your ASIC library, but the code is technology dependent and the description is difficult to write.
- You can use Verilog constructs to direct HDL Compiler to infer registers from the description. The advantages are these:
 - The Verilog description is easier to write and the code is technology independent.
 - This method allows Design Compiler to select the type of component inferred, based on constraints.

If a specific component is necessary, use instantiation.

Naming Considerations

The bus output instance names are controlled by the following variables:

`bus_naming_style` (controls names of elements of Verilog arrays) and `bus_inference_style` (controls bus inference style). To reduce naming conflicts, use caution when applying nondefault naming styles. For details, see the man pages.

Generic Netlists

After HDL Compiler reads a design, it creates a generic netlist consisting of generic components, such as SEQGENs (see [“Generic Sequential Cells \(SEQGENs\)” on page 4-2.](#))

For example, after HDL Compiler reads the my_fsm design in [Example 1-8 on page 1-27](#), it creates the generic netlist shown in [Example 1-9 on page 1-28](#).

Example 1-8

```
module my_fsm (clk, rst, y);
  input clk, rst;
  output y;
  reg y;
  reg [2:0] current_state;
  parameter
    red    = 3'b001,
    green  = 3'b010,
    yellow = 3'b100;
  always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
    if (rst)
      current_state = red;
    else
      case (current_state)
        red:
          current_state = green;
        green:
          current_state = yellow;
        yellow:
          current_state = red;
        default:
          current_state = red;
      endcase
  always @ (current_state)
    if (current_state == yellow)
      y = 1'b1;
    else
      y = 1'b0;
endmodule
```

After HDL Compiler reads in the my_fsm design, it outputs the generic netlist shown in [Example 1-9](#).

Example 1-9 Generic Netlist

```

module my_fsm ( clk, rst, y );
  input clk, rst;
  output y;
  wire  N0, N1, N2, N3, N4, N5, N6, N7, N8, N9, N10, N11, N12, N13, N14,
  N15,
        N16, N17, N18;
  wire  [2:0] current_state;

  GTECH_OR2 C10 ( .A(current_state[2]), .B(current_state[1]), .Z(N1) );
  GTECH_OR2 C11 ( .A(N1), .B(N0), .Z(N2) );
  GTECH_OR2 C14 ( .A(current_state[2]), .B(N4), .Z(N5) );
  GTECH_OR2 C15 ( .A(N5), .B(current_state[0]), .Z(N6) );
  GTECH_OR2 C18 ( .A(N15), .B(current_state[1]), .Z(N8) );
  GTECH_OR2 C19 ( .A(N8), .B(current_state[0]), .Z(N9) );
  \**SEQGEN** \current_state_reg[2] ( .clear(rst), .preset(1'b0),
    .next_state(N7), .clocked_on(clk), .data_in(1'b0), .enable(1'b0),
  .Q(
    current_state[2]), .synch_clear(1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0),
    .synch_toggle(1'b0), .synch_enable(1'b1) );
  \**SEQGEN** \current_state_reg[1] ( .clear(rst), .preset(1'b0),
    .next_state(N3), .clocked_on(clk), .data_in(1'b0), .enable(1'b0),
  .Q(
    current_state[1]), .synch_clear(1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0),
    .synch_toggle(1'b0), .synch_enable(1'b1) );
  \**SEQGEN** \current_state_reg[0] ( .clear(1'b0), .preset(rst),
    .next_state(N14), .clocked_on(clk), .data_in(1'b0),
  .enable(1'b0), .Q(
    current_state[0]), .synch_clear(1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0),
    .synch_toggle(1'b0), .synch_enable(1'b1) );
  GTECH_NOT I_0 ( .A(current_state[2]), .Z(N15) );
  GTECH_OR2 C47 ( .A(current_state[1]), .B(N15), .Z(N16) );
  GTECH_OR2 C48 ( .A(current_state[0]), .B(N16), .Z(N17) );
  GTECH_NOT I_1 ( .A(N17), .Z(N18) );
  GTECH_OR2 C51 ( .A(N10), .B(N13), .Z(N14) );
  GTECH_NOT I_2 ( .A(current_state[0]), .Z(N0) );
  GTECH_NOT I_3 ( .A(N2), .Z(N3) );
  GTECH_NOT I_4 ( .A(current_state[1]), .Z(N4) );
  GTECH_NOT I_5 ( .A(N6), .Z(N7) );
  GTECH_NOT I_6 ( .A(N9), .Z(N10) );
  GTECH_OR2 C68 ( .A(N7), .B(N3), .Z(N11) );
  GTECH_OR2 C69 ( .A(N10), .B(N11), .Z(N12) );
  GTECH_NOT I_7 ( .A(N12), .Z(N13) );
  GTECH_BUF B_0 ( .A(N18), .Z(y) );
endmodule

```

The `report_cell` command lists the cells in a design. [Example 1-10](#) shows the `report_cell` output for my_fsm design.

Example 1-10

```
dc_shell> report_cell
Information: Updating design information... (UID-85)
```

```
*****
Report : cell
Design : my_fsm
Version: B-2008.09
Date   : Tue Jul 15 07:11:02 2008
*****
```

Attributes:

```
  b - black box (unknown)
  c - control logic
  h - hierarchical
  n - noncombinational
  r - removable
  u - contains unmapped logic
```

Cell Attributes	Reference	Library	Area

B_0	GTECH_BUF	gtech	0.000000 u
C10	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 u
C11	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 c, u
C14	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 u
C15	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 c, u
C18	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 u
C19	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 c, u
C47	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 u
C48	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 u
C51	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 u
C68	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 c, u
C69	GTECH_OR2	gtech	0.000000 c, u
I_0	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_1	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_2	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_3	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_4	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_5	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_6	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 u
I_7	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000 c, u
current_state_reg[0]	**SEQGEN**		0.000000 n, u
current_state_reg[1]	**SEQGEN**		0.000000 n, u
current_state_reg[2]	**SEQGEN**		0.000000 n, u

Total 23 cells			0.000000
1			

Inference Reports

HDL Compiler generates inference reports for the following inferred components:

- Flip-flops and latches, described in [“Inference Reports for Registers” on page 4-5](#).
- MUX_OP cells, described in [“MUX_OP Inference” on page 3-15](#).
- Three-state devices, described in [“Three-State Driver Inference Report” on page 6-2](#).
- Multibit devices, described in [“infer_multibit and dont_infer_multibit” on page 7-9](#).
- FSMs, described in [“FSM Inference Report” on page 5-6](#).

Error Messages

If the design contains syntax errors, these are typically reported as ver-type errors; mapping errors, which occur when the design is translated to the target technology, are reported as elab-type errors. An error will cause the script you are currently running to terminate; a fatal error will terminate your Design Compiler session. Warnings are errors that do not stop the read from completing, but the results might not be as expected.

The `suppress_errors` variable allows you to suppress warning messages when reading Verilog source files. If this variable is set to true, warnings are not issued; if false, warnings are issued. The default is false. This variable has no effect on fatal error messages, such as syntax errors, that stop the reading process.

You can also use this variable to disable specific warnings: set `suppress_errors` to a space-separated string of the error ID codes you want suppressed. Error ID codes are printed immediately after warning and error messages. For example, to suppress the warning

```
Warning: Assertion statements are not supported. They are
ignored near symbol "assert" on line 24 (HDL-193).
```

set the variable to

```
suppress_errors = "HDL-193"
```

Language Construct Support

HDL Compiler supports only those constructs that can be synthesized, that is, realized in logic. For example, you cannot use simulation time as a trigger, because time is an element of the simulation process and cannot be realized in logic. See [Appendix B, “Verilog Language Support.”](#)

Licenses

Reading and writing license requirements are listed in [Table 1-4](#).

Table 1-4 License Requirements

Reader	Reading license required		Writing license required	
	RTL	Netlist	RTL	Netlist
HDL Compiler	Yes	Yes	No	No
UNTI-Verilog (netlist reader)	Not applicable	No	Not applicable	No
Automatic detection (read_verilog)	Yes	Yes	Not applicable	Not applicable

2

Coding Considerations

This chapter describes HDL Compiler synthesis coding considerations in the following sections:

- [Coding for QoR](#)
- [Creating Relative Placement in Hardware Description Languages](#)
- [General Coding Guidelines](#)
- [Interacting With Other Flows](#)

Coding for QoR

The goal of HDL Compiler is to provide the best QoR independent of coding style. However, the tool is limited to implementing your design based on the information (context) available at the time. The following strategies can be used to ensure the tool has enough information to make good optimization decisions.

- [Expose Constants to Reduce Hardware](#)
- [Size Variables Efficiently](#)

Expose Constants to Reduce Hardware

HDL Compiler cannot determine if a module input is a constant even if the upper-level module connects it to a constant value. To expose it as a constant, use a parameter instead of an input port for that value. Constant propagation is the compile-time evaluation of expressions that contain constants. HDL Compiler uses constant propagation to reduce the amount of hardware required to implement complex operators. When you know that a variable is a constant, specify it as a constant. For example, a + operator with a constant of 1 as one of its arguments causes an incrementer, rather than a general adder, to be built. If both arguments of an operator are constants, no hardware is constructed, because HDL Compiler can calculate the expression's value and insert it directly into the circuit.

Comparators and shifters also benefit from constant propagation. When you shift a vector by a constant, the implementation requires only a reordering (rewiring) of bits, so no logic is needed.

Size Variables Efficiently

Use design knowledge to size variables efficiently. In [Example 2-1](#), the adder sums the 8-bit value of input a with the lower 4 bits of temp. Although temp is declared as an 8-bit value, the upper 4 bits of temp are always 0, so only the lower 4 bits of temp are needed for the addition.

You can simplify the addition by changing temp to temp [3:0], as the shows. Now, instead of using eight full adders to perform the addition, four full adders are used for the lower 4 bits and four half adders are used for the upper 4 bits. This yields a significant savings in circuit area.

Example 2-1 Reducing Adders by Using temp [3:0] Bit-Width

```
module all (a,b,y);  
  input  [7:0] a,b;  
  output [8:0] y;  
  function [8:0] add_lt_10;
```

```
input  [7:0] a,b;
reg    [7:0] temp;
begin
    if (b < 10)
        temp = b;
    else
        temp = 10;
    add_lt_10 = a + temp [3:0]; // use [3:0] for temp
end
endfunction
assign y = add_lt_10(a,b);
endmodule
```

Creating Relative Placement in Hardware Description Languages

Relative placement allows you to create structures in which you specify the relative column and row positions of instances. During placement and optimization, these structures are preserved and the cells in each structure are placed as a single entity.

Relative placement is usually applied to datapaths and registers, but you can apply it to any cells in your design, controlling the exact relative placement topology of gate-level logic groups and defining the circuit layout. You can use relative placement to explore QoR benefits, such as shorter wire lengths, reduced congestion, better timing, skew control, fewer vias, better yield, and lower dynamic and leakage power.

Relative placement information embedded within the Verilog or VHDL description allows you to specify and modify relative placement information with greater flexibility, no longer requiring you to update the location of many of the cells in the design. Using embedded compiler directives, these relative placement constraints can be placed in an RTL design, a GTECH netlist, or a mapped netlist. The following sections describe how to specify relative placement data for RTL designs, GTECH netlists, or mapped netlists.

Relative placement constraints can also be added inside the shell using Tcl commands. For more information, see the “Using Design Compiler Topographical Technology” chapter in the *Design Compiler User Guide*.

Directives for Specifying Relative Placement

You can specify relative placement information by using the following compiler directives:

- ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`
See [“Creating Groups Using ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`” on page 2-4.](#)
- ``rp_place`
See [“Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances Using ``rp_place`” on page 2-5.](#)
- ``rp_fill`
See [“Placing Cells Automatically Using ``rp_fill`” on page 2-6.](#)
- ``rp_array_dir`
See [“Specifying Placement for Array Elements Using ``rp_array_dir`” on page 2-8.](#)
- `rp_align`
See [“Specifying Cell Alignment Using `rp_align`” on page 2-8.](#)
- `rp_orient`
See [“Specifying Cell Orientation Using `rp_orient`” on page 2-9.](#)
- `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore`
See [“Ignoring Relative Placement Using `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore`” on page 2-10.](#)

Creating Groups Using ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`

The ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup` directives allow you to specify a relative placement group. The directives are available for RTL designs and netlist designs. For netlist designs, you must place all cell instances between the directives to declare them as members of the specified group. For RTL designs, you must specify the directives inside the always block for leaf-level relative placement groups. However, higher-level hierarchical groups do not have to be attached to an always block.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
`rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
//synopsys rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

You can determine the size of the group by using the *num_cols* and *num_rows* optional arguments to specify the number of rows and columns. If you specify the size, HDL Compiler checks the location of the instances that are placed in the group to verify that none of the instances are placed beyond the group's size limits; HDL Compiler generates an error message if a size violation occurs.

The following example shows that the inferred registers belong to a relative placement group named `rp_grp1`:

```
...
always @ (posedge CLK)
    `rp_group (rp_grp1)
    ...
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    Q1 <= DATA1;
...
```

Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances Using ``rp_place`

The ``rp_place` directive allows you to specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, a keepout region, or an instance to be placed in the current relative placement group. When you use the ``rp_place` directive to specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, you must instantiate the subgroup's instances outside of any group declarations in the module. This directive is available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
`rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
`rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
```

You can use the *col* and *row* optional arguments to specify absolute row or column locations in the group's grid or locations that are relative to the current pointer value. To represent locations relative to the current pointer, enclose the column and row values in angle brackets (<>), as shown in the following example:

```
`rp_place (my_group_1 0 0)
`rp_place (my_group_2 0 <1>)
```

The example shows that group `my_group_1` is placed at location (0,0) in the grid, and group `my_group_2` is placed at the next row position (0,1).

If you do not specify the *col* and *row* arguments, objects are automatically placed in the current group's grid, filling empty slots. Each time a new instance is declared that is not explicitly placed, it is inserted into the grid at the location indicated by the current value of the pointer. After the instance is placed, the pointer is updated and the process is ready to be repeated.

The following Verilog example shows a relative placement group named `my_reg_bank` that includes four subgroups that are placed at the following locations, respectively: (0,0), (0,1), (1, *), and (1, *) The wildcard character (*) indicates that HDL Compiler can choose any value.

```
`rp_group (my_reg_bank)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp1 0 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp4 0 1)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp2 1 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp3 1 *)
`rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)
```

Placing Cells Automatically Using `rp_fill

The ``rp_fill` directive automatically places the cells at the location specified by a pointer. Each time a new instance is declared that is not explicitly placed, it is inserted into the grid at the location indicated by the current value of the pointer. After the instance is placed, the pointer is updated incrementally and the process is ready to be repeated. This directive is available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The ``rp_fill` arguments define how the pointer is updated. The *col* and *row* parameters specify the initial coordinates of the pointer. These parameters can represent absolute row or column locations in the group's grid or locations that are relative to the current pointer value. To represent locations relative to the current pointer, enclose the column and row values in angle brackets (<>). For example, assume the current pointer location is (3,4). In this case, specifying `rp_fill <1> 0` initializes the pointer to (4,0) and that is where the next instance is placed. Absolute coordinates must be non-negative integers; relative coordinates can be any integer.

The *pattern* option determines how the pointer is incrementally updated. The option's *pat* argument is a string that provides the following symbols to control placement:

Symbol	Definition
U	up
D	down
R	right

Symbol	Definition
L	left
X	stop

The control string is read one character at a time, and the pointer is adjusted based on the symbols that are defined. If HDL Compiler reads an X in the string, the instance placement is complete and the next instance can be placed in the grid. When HDL Compiler reaches the end of the control string, the pattern interpretation continues at the first character. For example, the pattern UX inserts cells one after another up a column; this is the default pattern. The pattern UUX creates a column of instances with an empty grid cell between each pair of instances, and the pattern RX fills a row with instances.

In addition to the symbols that control placement, the `pattern` option's `pat` argument can include integers and square brackets. Square brackets around the argument, `[pat]`, create a control string. When an integer is included in the string, it applies to the next control symbol or control string in the current pattern. For example, the pattern 4UX fills every fourth cell of a column. The pattern 31[UX]31DRX fills a 32-cell high column and then advances one column to the right and resumes filling from the bottom of the column.

If no pattern is specified, the incremental operation uses the last pattern string that is defined, beginning with the first character in the string. If the `row` and `column` parameters are not specified, HDL Compiler does not initialize the fill pointer, and it keeps the value it had before the `'rp_fill` directive was read. If HDL Compiler encounters a group declaration, the fill pointer is initialized to (0,0) and the pattern is set to UX.

When an array of instantiations is encountered in Verilog, the cells are enumerated to match the pattern using the left-hand index first and iterating toward the right-hand index, as shown in the following example:

```
and a[0:2] ( ); // generates a[0], a[1], a[2]
```

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
'rp_fill ( {col row} {pattern pat} )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_fill ( col row} {pattern pat} )
```

The following example for netlist designs shows the R and U patterns:

```
//rp_group (group_x)
//rp_fill (0 0 UX)
Cell C1 (...);
```

```

Cell C2 (...);
Cell C3 (...);
//rp_fill (0 <1> RX) // move up a row to the far left, fill to R
Cell c4 (...);
Cell C5 (...);
Cell C6 (...);
//rp_endgroup (group_x)

```

Specifying Placement for Array Elements Using ``rp_array_dir`

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in RTL designs but not in netlist designs.

The ``rp_array_dir` directive specifies whether the elements of an array are placed upward, from the least significant bit to the most significant bit, or downward, from the most significant bit to the least significant bit.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_array_dir ( up|down )
```

The following Verilog example shows array elements that are placed upward, from the least significant bit to the most significant bit:

```

...
always @ (posedge CLK)
  `rp_group (rp_grp1/
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir (up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    Q1 <= DATA1 ;
...

```

Specifying Cell Alignment Using `rp_align`

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_align` directive explicitly specifies the alignment of the placed instance within the grid cell when the instance is smaller than the cell. If you specify the optional *inst* instance name argument, the alignment applies only to that instance; however, if you do not specify an instance, the new alignment applies to all subsequent instantiations within the group until HDL Compiler encounters another `rp_align` directive. If the instance straddles cells, the alignment takes place within the straddled region. The alignment value is *sw* (southwest) by default. The instance is snapped to legal row and routing grid coordinates.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_align ( n|s|e|w|nw|sw|ne|se|pin=name { inst } )
```

You must specify either the alignment value or the pin name. In the following example, the `rp_align` directive causes the cell `C1` to be placed at the north-east corner.

```
// synopsys rp_group (group_x)
// synopsys rp_fill ( 0 0 RX )
//synopsys rp_align (NE C1 )
Cell C1 ...
Cell C2 ...
Cell C3 ...
//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 <1> RX )
Cell C4 ...
Cell C5 ...
Cell C6 ...
// synopsys rp_endgroup (group_x)
```

Specifying Cell Orientation Using `rp_orient`

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_orient` directive allows you to control the orientation of library cells placed in the current group. When you specify a list of possible orientations, HDL Compiler chooses the first legal orientation for the cell.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { inst } )
//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { group_name inst } )
```

If you specify an instance value using the *inst* argument shown in the first (nonhierarchical) syntax format, the orientation applies only to that instance. If you do not specify an instance, the orientation applies to all subsequent instances until another orientation is specified.

If you specify the *group_name inst* syntax format, HDL Compiler applies the orientation to the specified instance, and the rest of the group remains unchanged. The default orientation for a group declaration is `N`, which stands for *no flip no mirror*, where *flip* refers to a rotation at the horizontal axis and *mirror* is a rotation at the vertical axis. The `F` value stands for flip; therefore, `FN`, `FW`, `FS`, and `FE` refer to flip north, flip west, flip south, and flip east, respectively.

In the following example, cell `C1` is oriented westwards:

```
// synopsys rp_group (group_x)
...
// synopsys rp_orient (W C1)
Cell C0 ...
```

```
Cell C1 ...
...
```

Ignoring Relative Placement Using `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore`

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore` directives allow you to ignore specified lines in the input file. Any lines between the two directives are omitted from relative placement. The `include` and `define` directives, variable substitution, and cell mapping are not ignored.

The `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore` directives allow you to include the instantiation of submodules in a relative placement group close to the `rp_place hier group(inst)` location to place relative placement array.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_ignore
//synopsys rp_endignore
```

In the following example, the directive `//synopsys rp_fill (0 <1> RX)` is ignored. However, the other directives are included:

```
// synopsys rp_group (group_x)
// synopsys rp_fill ( 0 0 RX )
Cell C1 ...
Cell C2 ...
Cell C3 ...
    // synopsys rp_ignore
//synopsys rp_fill ( 0 <1> RX )
    // synopsys rp_endignore
Cell C4 ...
Cell C5 ...
Cell C6 ...
// synopsys rp_endgroup (group_x)
```

Relative Placement Examples

[Example 2-2](#) shows how Verilog relative placement directives are applied to several register banks in a design.

Example 2-2 Relative Placement Using 'rp_group, 'rp_place, 'rp_fill, and 'rp_array_dir Directives

```
module dff_async_reset (input [7:0] DATA1, DATA2, DATA3, DATA4,
                      input CLK, RESET,
                      output logic [7:0] Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4);

  `rp_group (my_reg_bank)
  `rp_place (hier rp_grp1 * 0)
  `rp_place (hier rp_grp2 * 0)
  `rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)

  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  begin
    `rp_group (rp_grp1)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    if (RESET)
      Q1 <= 8'b0;
    else
      Q1 <= DATA1;
  end

  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  `rp_group (rp_grp2)
  `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
  `rp_array_dir(down)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp2)
  if (RESET)
    Q2 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q2 <= DATA2;

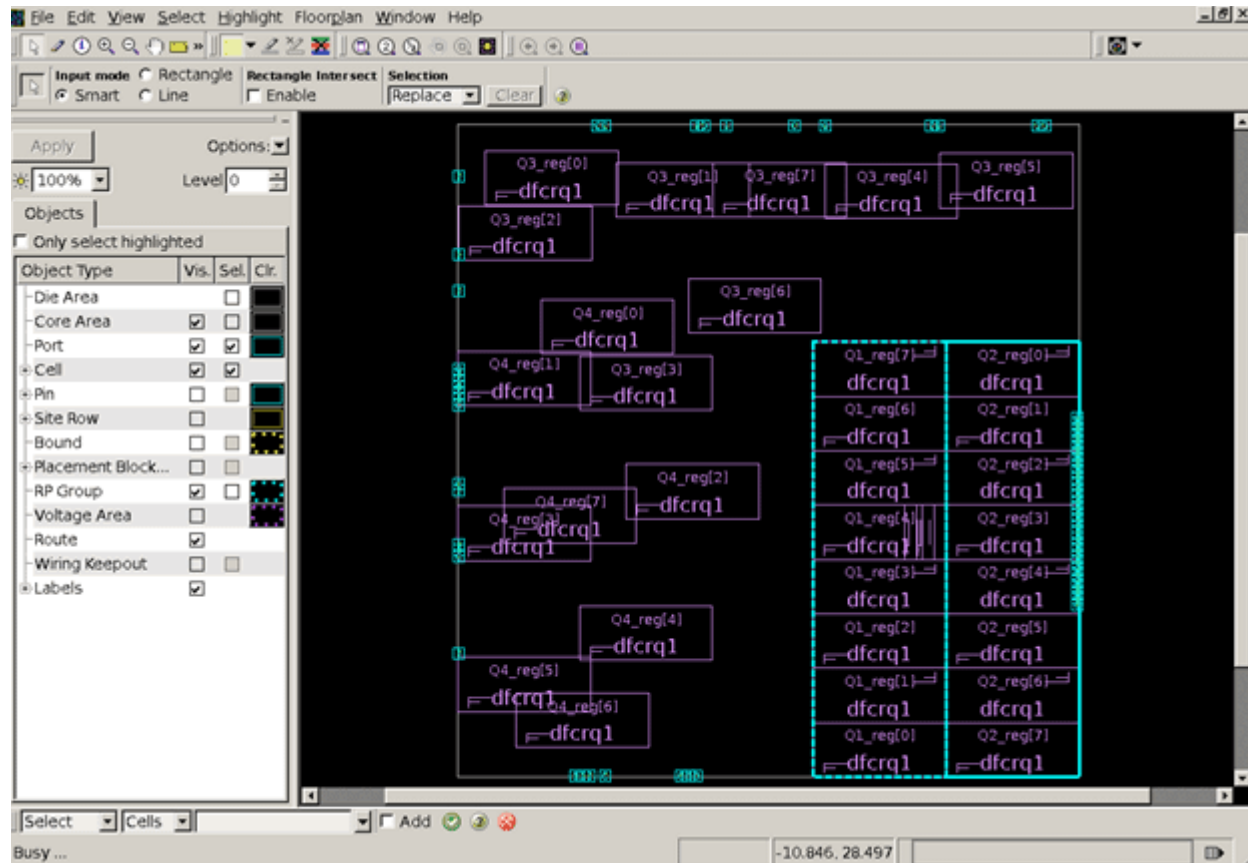
  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  if (RESET)
    Q3 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q3 <= DATA3;

  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
  if (RESET)
    Q4 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q4 <= DATA4;

endmodule
```

Figure 2-1 shows the layout of Example 2-2 after running Design Compiler topographical. Note that the register banks that were controlled with relative placement directives have a well structured layout, while the register banks that were not controlled with relative placement directives are not placed together.

Figure 2-1 Layout With Relative Placement Specified on Several Register Banks



In Example 2-3, each relative placement group consists of one array, and each group is placed vertically. Relative placement groups `rp_grp2` and `rp_grp4` are placed downwards: The cells start from the last element of the array (7), which is placed at row 0, and are decremented up to the first element (0). This is because the array direction is specified as `down`. The array direction is specified as `up` for relative placement groups `rp_grp1` and `rp_grp3`. Therefore, the first element (0) is placed first at row 0 and the array is incremented until the last element (7) is reached.

Example 2-3 Relative Placement Groups Placed Vertically

```
module dff_async_reset (input [7:0] DATA1, DATA2, DATA3, DATA4,
                      input CLK, RESET,
                      output logic [7:0] Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4);
```

```
`rp_group (my_reg_bank)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp1 * 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp2 * 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp3 * 0)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp4 * 0)
`rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
    `rp_group (rp_grp1)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
    if (RESET)
        Q1 <= 8'b0;
    else
        Q1 <= DATA1;
end

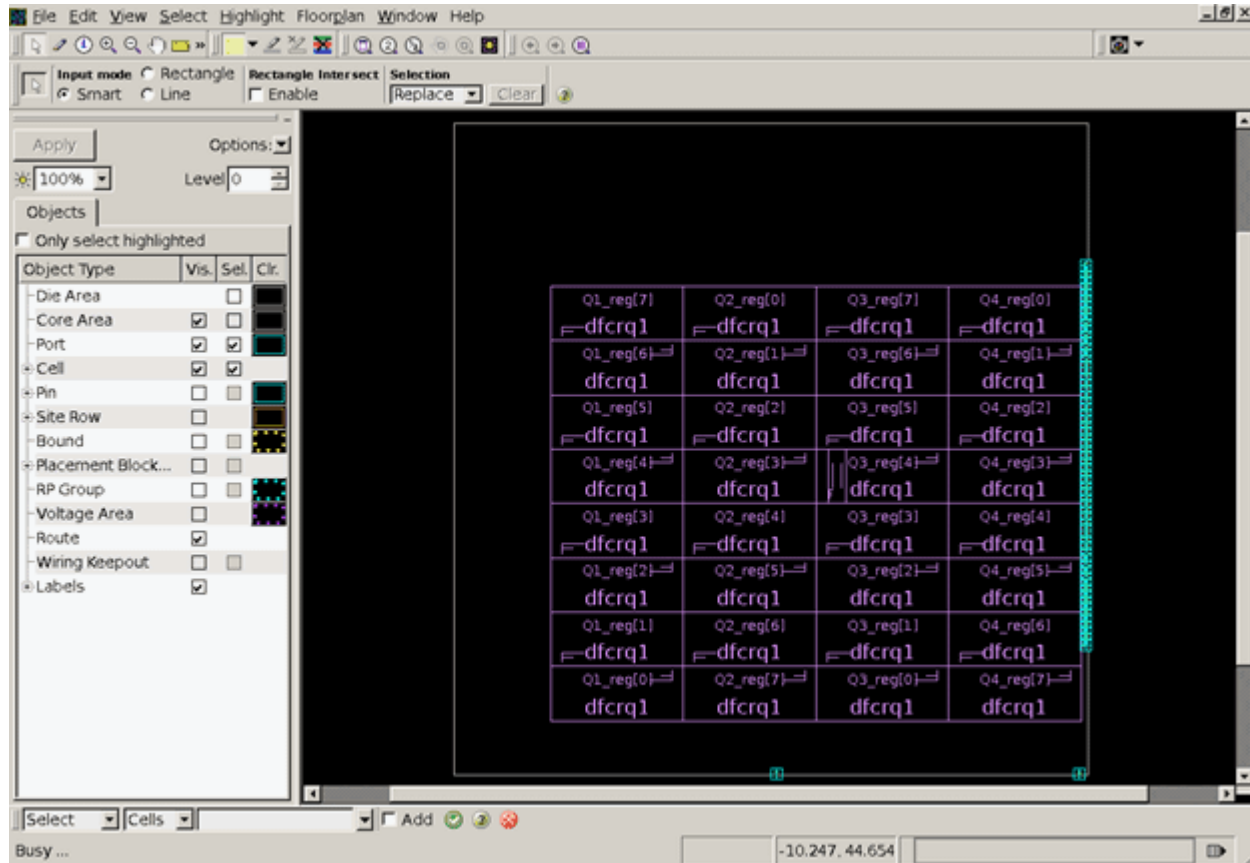
always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
    `rp_group (rp_grp2)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(down)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp2)
    if (RESET)
        Q2 <= 8'b0;
    else
        Q2 <= DATA2;
end

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
    `rp_group (rp_grp3)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(up)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp3)
    if (RESET)
        Q3 <= 8'b0;
    else
        Q3 <= DATA3;
end

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
    `rp_group (rp_grp4)
    `rp_fill (0 0 UX)
    `rp_array_dir(down)
    `rp_endgroup (rp_grp4)
    if (RESET)
        Q4 <= 8'b0;
    else
        Q4 <= DATA4;
end
endmodule
```

Figure 2-2 shows the layout generated from Example 2-3. Each relative placement group consists of one array, and each group is placed vertically.

Figure 2-2 Relative Placement Groups Placed Vertically



In Example 2-4, each relative placement group consists of one array, and each group is placed horizontally based on the ``rp_fill` directive set to `RX`, which specifies that the pointer for placing the cells is incremented to the right of the initial value. Relative placement groups `rp_grp2` and `rp_grp4` are placed downwards: The cells start from the last element of the array (7), which is placed at column 0 and are decremented up to the first element (0). This is because the array direction is specified as `down`. The array direction is specified as `up` for relative placement groups `rp_grp1` and `rp_grp3`. Therefore, the first element (0) is placed first at the column 0 and the array is incremented until the last element (7) is reached.

Example 2-4 Relative Placement Groups Placed Horizontally

```
module dff_async_reset (input [7:0] DATA1, DATA2, DATA3, DATA4,
                      input CLK, RESET,
                      output logic [7:0] Q1, Q2, Q3, Q4);

  `rp_group (my_reg_bank)
```

```

`rp_place (hier rp_grp1 0 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp2 0 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp3 0 *)
`rp_place (hier rp_grp4 0 *)
`rp_endgroup (my_reg_bank)

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
  `rp_group (rp_grp1)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(up)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp1)
  if (RESET)
    Q1 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q1 <= DATA1;
end

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
  `rp_group (rp_grp2)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(down)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp2)
  if (RESET)
    Q2 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q2 <= DATA2;
end

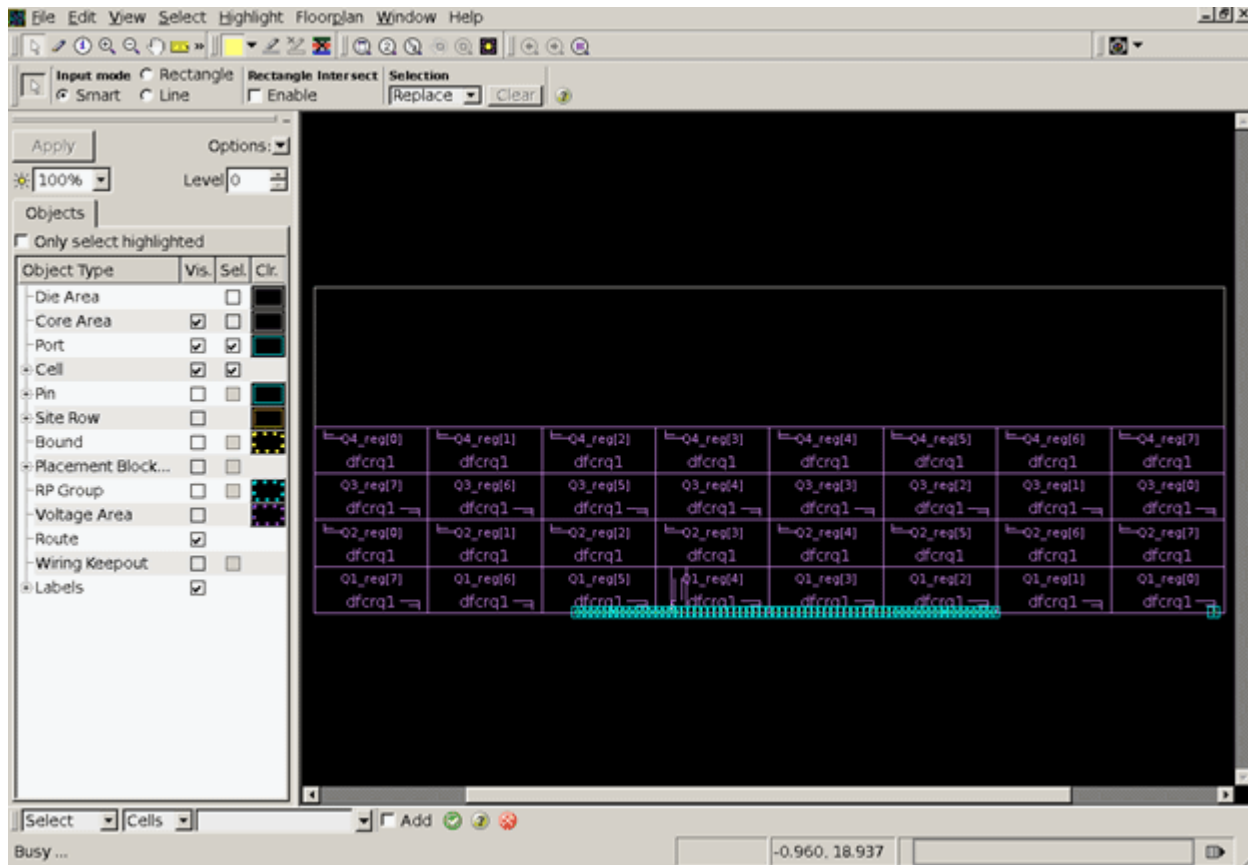
always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
  `rp_group (rp_grp3)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(up)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp3)
  if (RESET)
    Q3 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q3 <= DATA3;
end

always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
begin
  `rp_group (rp_grp4)
  `rp_fill (0 0 RX)
  `rp_array_dir(down)
  `rp_endgroup (rp_grp4)
  if (RESET)
    Q4 <= 8'b0;
  else
    Q4 <= DATA4;
end
endmodule

```

Figure 2-3 shows the layout generated from Example 2-4. Each relative placement group consists of one array, and each group is placed horizontally.

Figure 2-3 Relative Placement Groups Placed Horizontally



General Coding Guidelines

The following sections provide general coding guidelines:

- [Separate Sequential and Combinational Assignments](#)
 - [Persistence of Values Across Calls to Tasks](#)
 - [defparam](#)
 - [Function Placed Within a Module](#)
-

Separate Sequential and Combinational Assignments

To compute values synchronously and store them in flip-flops, set up an always block with a signal edge trigger. To let other values change asynchronously, make a separate always block with no signal edge trigger. Put the assignments you want clocked in the always block with the signal edge trigger and the other assignments in the other always block. This technique is used for creating Mealy machines, such as the one in [Example 2-5](#). Note that out changes asynchronously with in1 or in2.

Example 2-5 Mealy Machine

```
module mealy (in1, in2, clk, reset, out);
    input in1, in2, clk, reset;
    output out;
    reg current_state, next_state, out;

    always @(posedge clk or negedge reset)
        // state vector flip-flops (sequential)
        if (!reset)
            current_state = 0;
        else
            current_state = next_state;

    always @(in1 or in2 or current_state)
        // output and state vector decode (combinational)

        case (current_state)
            0: begin
                next_state = 1;
                out = 1'b0;
            end
            1: if (in1) begin
                next_state = 1'b0;
                out = in2;
            end
            else begin
                next_state = 1'b1;
            end
        endcase
endmodule
```

```
                out = !in2;
            end
        endcase

    endmodule
```

Persistence of Values Across Calls to Tasks

In Verilog simulation, a local variable in a function or task has a static lifetime by default, which means that the memory for it is allocated only once, at the beginning of simulation, and the value most recently written to it is preserved from one call to the next. In synthesis, HDL Compiler assumes by default that functions and tasks do not depend on these previous values and reinitializes all static variables in functions and tasks to unknowns at the beginning of each call.

Verilog code that does not conform to this synthesis assumption can yield a synthesis and simulation mismatch. It is recommended that you declare all functions and tasks using the `automatic` keyword, which tells the simulator to allocate new memory for local variables at the beginning of each call.

defparam

Usage of `defparam` is highly discouraged in synthesis because of ambiguity problems. Because of these problems, in synthesis `defparam` is not supported inside generate blocks. For details, see the Verilog LRM.

Function Placed Within a Module

You can place a function within a module during a function call. However, you cannot place a function before or after a module. Placing it before or after the module generates error messages because HDL Compiler cannot see the function when analyzing the design.

Interacting With Other Flows

The design structure created by HDL Compiler can impact commands that are applied to the design at later steps. To enable these flows, some considerations are required during the HDL Compiler analyze and elaborate steps. The following sections provide information and guidelines to help enable later flows.

- [Synthesis Flows](#)
- [Low-Power Flows](#)
- [Verification Flows](#)

Synthesis Flows

- [Controlling Structure With Parentheses](#)
- [Multibit Components](#)

Controlling Structure With Parentheses

You can use parentheses to force the synthesis of parallel hardware. For example, $(A + B) + (C + D)$ builds an adder for $A + B$, an adder for $C + D$, and an adder to add the result. Design Compiler preserves the subexpressions dictated by the parentheses, but this restriction on Design Compiler optimizations might lead to less-than-optimum area and timing results.

Parentheses can also be helpful in coding for late-arriving signals. For example, if you are adding three signals—A, B, and C—and A is late arriving, then $A + (B + C)$ can be useful in handling the late-arriving signal A. Note that Design Compiler will also try to create a structure to allow the late-arriving signal to meet timing. Any restriction on Design Compiler optimizations might lead to less-than-optimum area and timing results.

Multibit Components

HDL Compiler can infer multibit components. If your technology library supports multibit components, they can offer several benefits, such as reduced area and power or a more regular structure for place and route. For details about inferring multibit components, see [“infer_multibit and dont_infer_multibit” on page 7-9](#).

Low-Power Flows

The following section provides HDL Compiler guidelines for keeping a signal name.

Keeping Signal Names

By default, HDL Compiler performs optimizations, such as dead code elimination, unconnected logic, and so on, that remove nets defined in the RTL. If your downstream flow requires that you use one of these removed nets, you can give HDL Compiler guideline information for keeping a signal name by using the `hdlin_keep_signal_name` variable (default is `all_driving`) and the `keep_signal_name` directive. [Table 2-1](#) describes the variable options.

Table 2-1 hdlin_keep_signal_name Variable Options

Option	Description
<code>all</code>	<p>HDL Compiler attempts to preserve a signal if the signal isn't removed by optimizations. Both dangling and driving nets are considered. This option does not guarantee a signal is kept.</p> <p>Note: this option might cause the <code>check_design</code> command to issue LINT-2 and LINT-3 warnings:</p> <p>Warning: In design '...', net '...' has no drivers. Logic 0 assumed. (LINT-3)</p> <p>Warning: In design '...', net '...' driven by pin ' (no pin) ' has no loads. (LINT-2)</p>
<code>all_driving</code> (default)	<p>HDL Compiler attempts to preserve a signal if the signal isn't removed by optimizations and the signal is in an output path. Only driving nets are considered. This option does not guarantee a signal is kept.</p>
<code>user</code>	<p>This option works with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. HDL Compiler attempts to preserve a signal if the signal isn't removed by optimizations and that signal is labeled with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. Both dangling and driving nets are considered. Although not guaranteed, HDL Compiler typically keeps the specified signal for this configuration.</p>

Table 2-1 hdlin_keep_signal_name Variable Options (Continued)

Option	Description
user_driving	This option works with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. HDL Compiler attempts to preserve a signal if the signal is not removed by optimizations, the signal is in an output path, and the signal is labeled with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. Only driving nets are considered. Although not guaranteed, HDL Compiler typically keeps the specified signal for this configuration.
none	HDL Compiler does not attempt to keep any signals. This option overrides the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive.

Note:

When a signal has no driver, the tool assumes logic 0 (ground) for the driver.

Consider the signals test1, test2, test3, syn1, and syn2, in [Example 2-6](#). By default, HDL Compiler attempts to preserve the test1 and test2 signals because they are in output paths. HDL Compiler does not attempt to keep the test3 signal because it is not in an output path. HDL Compiler optimizes away the syn1 and syn2 signals.

Example 2-6

```

module test12 (in1, in2, in3, in4, out1,out2 );
    input  [3:0]   in1;
    input  [7:0]   in2;
    input in3;
    input in4;
    output reg  [7:0] out1,out2;

    wire test1,test2, test3, syn1,syn2;

    //synopsys async_set_reset "in4"

    assign test1= ( in1[3] & ~in1[2] & in1[1] & ~in1[0] );
        //test1 signal is in an input and output path
    assign test2= syn1+syn2;
        //test2 signal is in a output path, but it is not in an input path
    assign test3= in1 + in2;
        //test3 signal is in an input path, but it is not in an output path
    always @(in3 or in2 or in4 or test1)
        out2=test2+out1;
    always @(in3 or in2 or in4 or test1)
        if (in4)
            out1 = 8'h0;
        else
            if (in3 & test1)
                out1 = in2;
endmodule

```

To keep the test3 signal, set `hdlin_keep_signal_name` to `user` and place the `keep_signal_name` directive on test3, as shown in [Example 2-7](#).

Example 2-7

```
// set the hdlin_keep_signal_name variable to user
module ksn2 (in1, in2, in3, in4, out1,out2 );
    input  [3:0]   in1;
    input  [7:0]   in2;
    input in3;
    input in4;
    output reg  [7:0] out1,out2;

    wire test1,test2, test3, syn1,syn2;
    //synopsys keep_signal_name "test1 test2 test3"
    //synopsys async_set_reset "in4"

    assign test1= ( in1[3] & ~in1[2] & in1[1] & ~in1[0] );
        //test1 signal is in an input and output path
    assign test2= syn1+syn2;
        //test2 signal is in a output path, but it is not in an input path
    assign test3= in1 + in2;
        //test3 signal is in an input path, but it is not in an output path
    always @(in3 or in2 or in4 or test1)
        out2=test2+out1;
    always @(in3 or in2 or in4 or test1)
        if (in4)
            out1 = 8'h0;
        else
            if (in3 & test1)
                out1 = in2;
endmodule
```

Table 2-2 shows how the variable settings affect the preservation of signals test1, test2, and test3, with and without the directive applied to it. Asterisks indicate that HDL Compiler does not attempt to keep the signal and might remove it.

Table 2-2 Variable and Directive Matrix for Signals test1, test2, and test3

hdlin_ keep_signal_name =	all	none	user	user_driving	all_driving
keep_signal_name is not set on test1	attempts to keep	*	*	*	attempts to keep
keep_signal_name is set on test1	attempts to keep	*	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	attempts to keep
keep_signal_name is not set on test2	attempts to keep	*	*	*	attempts to keep
keep_signal_name is set on test2	attempts to keep	*	attempts to keep	attempts to keep	attempts to keep

Table 2-2 Variable and Directive Matrix for Signals test1, test2, and test3 (Continued)

hdlin_ keep_signal_name =	all	none	user	user_driving	all_driving
keep_signal_name is <i>not</i> set on test3 (Example 2-6)	attempts to keep	*	*	*	*
keep_signal_name is set on test3 (Example 2-7)	attempts to keep	*	attempts to keep	*	*

Verification Flows

The following section provides simulation-related coding information and information about simulation and synthesis mismatch issues.

Simulation/Synthesis Mismatch Issues

Simulation/synthesis mismatch issues are described in the following sections:

- [one_hot and one_cold Directives](#)
- [full_case and parallel_case Directives](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load](#)
- [Variable Part-Select Operator](#)
- [Sets and Resets](#)
- [Three-State Inference](#)
- [Asynchronous Design Verification](#)
- [Comparisons to x or z Values](#)
- [Timing Specifications](#)
- [Sensitivity Lists](#)
- [Initial States for Variables](#)

one_hot and one_cold Directives

A simulation/synthesis mismatch can occur if you use the `one_hot` and `one_cold` directives in your RTL but your design does not meet the requirements for their usage. See [“one_hot” on page 7-14](#) and [“one_cold” on page 7-14](#).

full_case and parallel_case Directives

A simulation/synthesis mismatch can occur if you use the `full_case` and `parallel_case` directives in your RTL but your design does not meet the requirements for their usage. See [“full_case” on page 7-7](#) and [“parallel_case” on page 7-15](#).

D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load

A simulation/synthesis mismatch can occur when inferring D flip-flops with synchronous and asynchronous loads. To reduce mismatches, use the recommended coding style. See [“D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load” on page 4-20](#).

Variable Part-Select Operator

A simulation/synthesis mismatch can occur if you select bits from an array that are not valid. See [“Part-Select Addressing Operators \(\[+:\] and \[-:\]\)” on page B-31](#).

Sets and Resets

A simulation/synthesis mismatch can occur if the set/reset signal is masked by an X during initialization in simulation. To reduce mismatches, use the `sync_set_reset` directive to label set/reset signals. See [“sync_set_reset” on page 7-16](#).

Three-State Inference

When inferring three-state devices, do not use multiple always blocks. Multiple always blocks cause a simulation/synthesis mismatch because the reg data type is not resolved. See [“Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable” on page 6-4](#).

Asynchronous Design Verification

In synchronous designs, all registers use the same clock signal, and the design has no combinational feedback paths, one-shots, or delay lines. If you use asynchronous design techniques, synthesis and simulation results might not agree. Because Design Compiler does not issue warning messages for asynchronous designs, you are responsible for verifying the correctness of your circuit.

The following examples show two approaches to the same counter design: [Example 2-8](#) is synchronous, and [Example 2-9](#) is asynchronous.

Example 2-8 Fully Synchronous Counter Design

```
module COUNT (RESET, ENABLE, CLK, Z);
input RESET, ENABLE, CLK;
output [2:0] Z;
reg [2:0] Z;
  always @(posedge CLK)
  begin
    if (RESET)
      begin
        Z = 3'b0;
      end
  end
```



```

        end
    else if (ENABLE)
        begin
            Z = Z + 1'b1;
        end
    end
endmodule

```

Example 2-9 Asynchronous Counter Design

```

module async_counter(enableCount, countOut);
input enableCount;
output [3:0] countOut;
reg [3:0] countOut;

wire ready, increment;
wire [9:0] tmp;

assign increment = enableCount & ready;

always @(increment or countOut)
begin
    if (increment)
    begin
        countOut = countOut + 1;
    end
end

// pulse generator
genvar i;
generate
    for (i=0; i<9; i=i+1) begin: delay_chain
        IV delInv(tmp[i], tmp[i+1]); // lsi_10k.db library invert
    end
endgenerate
assign tmp[0] = increment;
assign ready = tmp[9];

endmodule

```

Some forms of asynchronous behavior are not supported in an RTL coding style. For example, you might expect $X = \sim(A \& (\sim(\sim A)))$, a circuit description of a one-shot signal generator, to generate three inverters (an inverting delay line) and a NAND gate. However, this circuit description is optimized to $X = A \sim\& (\sim A)$ and then to $X = 1$.

If special care is not taken when synthesizing the design, the instantiated inverter chain will be optimized and the synthesized design will not function the same way as the RTL simulates because the timing relationship between ready and increment will not be preserved. In this case, dont_touch constraints on the inverters and manual timing checks will be required to ensure the functionality of the circuit.

Comparisons to x or z Values

HDL Compiler always evaluates comparisons to an x or a z as false. This behavior is different from simulation behavior and might cause a synthesis/simulation mismatch. To prevent such a mismatch, do not use don't care values in comparisons.

To a simulator, an x or a z value is a distinct value, different from a 1 or a 0. In synthesis, however, an x or a z value becomes a 0 or a 1. When used in a comparison, HDL Compiler always evaluates the comparison to false. Because of this difference in treatment, the potential for a simulation/synthesis mismatch exists whenever a comparison is made with a don't care value.

For example,

```
if (a == 1'bx)
...
```

is synthesized as

```
if FALSE
```

The following case statement causes a synthesis/simulation mismatch because the simulator evaluates 2'b1x to match 11 and 10, but the synthesis tool evaluates 2'b1x to false; the same holds true for the 2'b0x- evaluation.

```
case (A)
  2'b1x:...  -- you want 2'b1x to match 11 and 10 but
              -- Presto always evaluates this comparison
              -- to false
  2'b0x: .... -- you want 2'b0x to match 00 and 01 but
              -- Presto always evaluates this comparison
              -- to false
  default : ....
endcase
```

HDL Compiler issues a warning similar to the following when it synthesizes such comparisons:

```
Warning: Comparison against '?', 'x', or 'z' values is always false. It
may
cause simulation/synthesis mismatch. (ELAB-310)
```

In [Example 2-10](#), HDL Compiler always assigns 1 to B (and issues an ELAB-310 warning), because `if (A == 1'bx)` is always evaluated to false.

Example 2-10 Comparison to x Ignored

```
module test(A, B);
  input A;
  output reg B;
  always begin
```

```
if (A == 1'bx)
    B = 0;
else
    B = 1;
end
endmodule
```

Timing Specifications

HDL Compiler ignores all timing controls because these controls cannot be realized in logic. In general, you can safely include timing control information in your description if it does not change the value clocked into a flip-flop. That is, the delay must be less than the clock period; otherwise, synthesis might disagree with simulation.

You can assign a delay value in a wire or wand declaration, and you can use the Verilog keywords `scalared` and `vectored` for simulation. HDL Compiler accepts the syntax of these constructs, but they are ignored when the circuit is synthesized.

Sensitivity Lists

If all the signals read within the `always` block are not listed in the sensitivity list, HDL Compiler generates a warning similar to the following:

```
Warning: Variable 'foo' is being read in block 'bar' declared
on line 88 but does not occur in the timing control of the
block.
```

The circuit synthesized by HDL Compiler is sensitive to all signals within the block, even if they are not listed in the sensitivity list. This differs from simulator behavior, which relies on the list. To prevent synthesis/simulation mismatches, follow these guidelines when developing the sensitivity list:

- For sequential logic, include the clock signal and all asynchronous control signals in the sensitivity list.
- For combinational logic, be sure that all inputs are in the sensitivity list.

HDL Compiler supports the Verilog 2001 construct, `always @*`, which provides a convenient way to ensure that all variables are listed.

HDL Compiler ignores sensitivity lists that do not contain an edge expression, and builds the logic as if all variables within the `always` block were contained in the sensitivity list. When any edge expressions are listed in the sensitivity list, no `nonedge` expressions can be listed. HDL Compiler issues an error message if you try to mix edge expressions and ordinary variables in the sensitivity list.

When the sensitivity list does not contain an edge expression, combinational logic is usually generated, although latches might be generated if the variable is not fully specified, that is, if the variable is not assigned on every path through the block.

Note:

The statements @ (posedge clock) and @ (negedge clock) are not supported in functions or tasks.

Initial States for Variables

For functions and tasks, any local reg variables are initialized to 0, and values of output ports are not preserved across calls. In simulators, values are typically preserved. This difference in behavior often causes a synthesis/simulation mismatch. See [“Persistence of Values Across Calls to Tasks” on page 2-18](#).

3

Modeling Combinational Logic

Logic circuits can be divided into two general classes:

- Combinational–The value of the output depends only on the values of the input signals.
- Sequential–The value of the output depends only on the values of the input signals and the previous condition on the circuit.

This chapter discusses combinational logic synthesis in the following sections:

- [Synthetic Operators](#)
- [Logic and Arithmetic Expressions](#)
- [Multiplexing Logic](#)
- [MUX_OP Components With Variable Indexing](#)
- [Modeling Complex MUX Inferences: Bit and Memory Accesses](#)
- [Bit-Truncation Coding for DC Ultra Datapath Extraction](#)
- [Latches in Combinational Logic](#)

Synthetic Operators

Synopsys provides a collection of intellectual property (IP), referred to as the DesignWare Basic IP Library, to support the synthesis products. Basic IP provides basic implementations of common arithmetic functions that can be referenced by HDL operators in your RTL source code.

The DesignWare paradigm is built on a hierarchy of abstractions. HDL operators (either built-in operators like + and *, or HDL functions and procedures) are associated with synthetic operators, which are bound in turn to synthetic modules. Each synthetic module can have multiple architectural realizations, called implementations. When you use the HDL addition operator in a design description, HDL Compiler infers the need for an adder resource and puts an abstract representation of the addition operation into your circuit netlist. The same holds true when you instantiate a DesignWare component. For example, an instantiation of DW01_add will be mapped to the synthetic operator associated with it. See [Figure 3-1 on page 3-3](#).

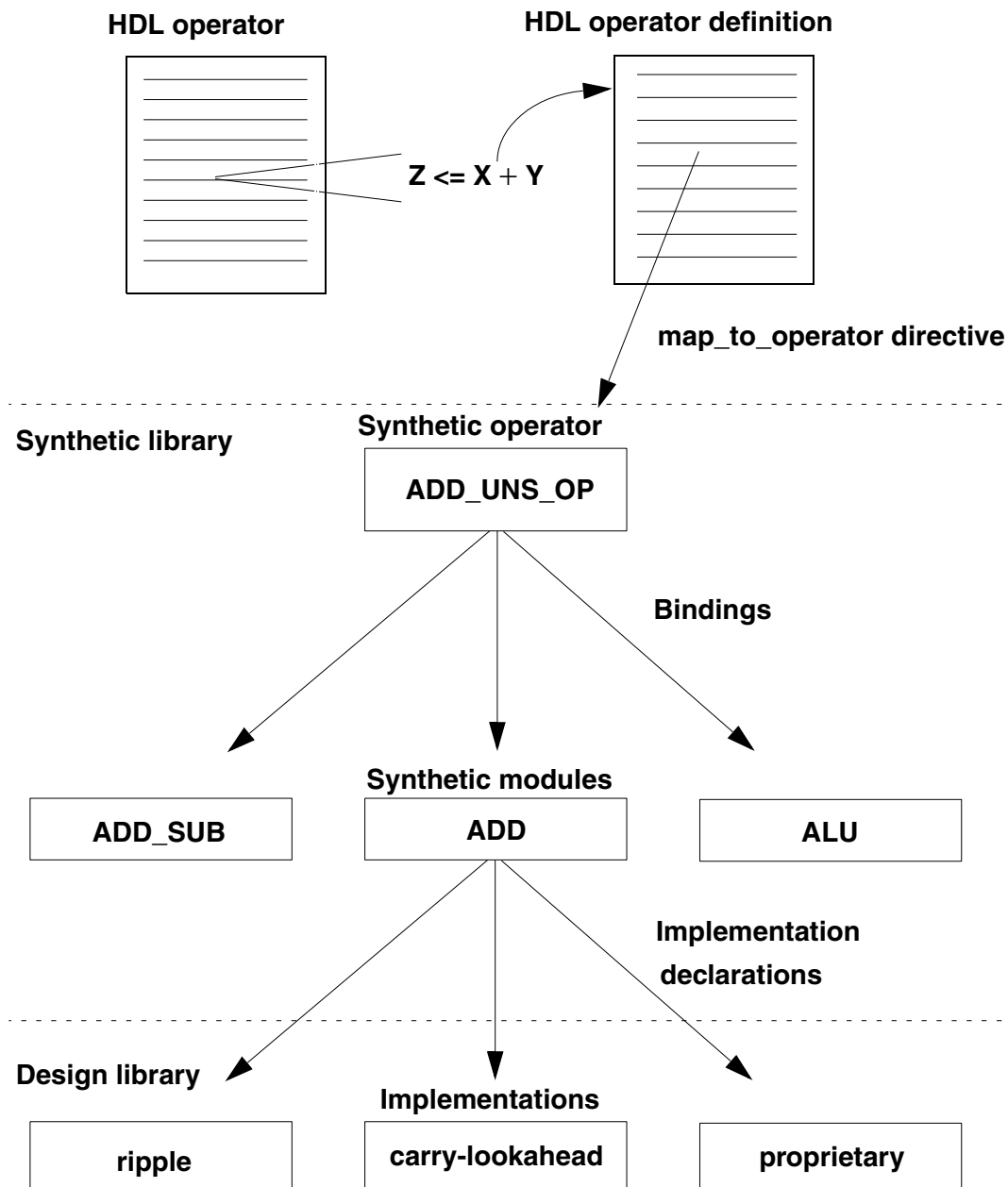
A synthetic library contains definitions for synthetic operators, synthetic modules, and bindings. It also contains declarations that associate synthetic modules with their implementations.

To display information about the standard synthetic library that is included with a Design Compiler license, use the `report_synlib` command:

```
report_synlib standard.sldb
```

For more information about DesignWare synthetic operators, modules, and libraries, see the DesignWare documentation.

Figure 3-1 DesignWare Hierarchy



Logic and Arithmetic Expressions

The following sections discuss logic and arithmetic expression synthesis:

- [Basic Operators](#)
- [Carry-Bit Overflow](#)
- [Divide Operators](#)
- [Sign Conversions](#)

Basic Operators

When HDL Compiler elaborates a design, it maps HDL operators to synthetic (DesignWare) operators that appear in the generic netlist. When Design Compiler optimizes the design, it maps these operators to DesignWare synthetic modules and chooses the best implementation, based on constraints, option settings, and wire load models.

A Design-Compiler license includes a DesignWare-Basic license that enables the DesignWare synthetic modules listed in [Table 3-1](#). These modules support common logic and arithmetic HDL operators. By default, adders and subtractors must be more than 4 bits wide to be mapped to these modules. If they are smaller, the operators are mapped to combinational logic.

Table 3-1 Operators Supported by a DesignWare-Basic License

HDL operator	Linked to DesignWare synthetic module
Comparison (> or <)	DW01_cmp2
Absolute value (abs)	DW01_absval
Addition (+)	DW01_add
Subtraction (-)	DW01_sub
Addition or subtraction (+ or -)	DW01_addsub
Incrementer (+)	DW01_inc
Decrementer (-)	DW01_dec

Table 3-1 Operators Supported by a DesignWare-Basic License (Continued)

HDL operator	Linked to DesignWare synthetic module
Incrementer or decrementer (+ or -)	DW01_incdec
Multiplier (*)	DW02_mult

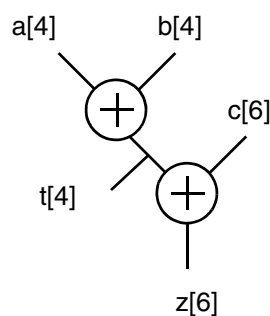
Carry-Bit Overflow

When Design Compiler performs arithmetic optimization, it considers how to handle the overflow from carry bits during addition. The optimized structure is affected by the bit-widths you declare for storing intermediate results. For example, suppose you write an expression that adds two 4-bit numbers and stores the result in a 4-bit register. If the result of the addition overflows the 4-bit output, the most significant bits are truncated. [Example 3-1](#) shows how overflow characteristics are handled.

Example 3-1 Adding Numbers of Different Bit-Widths

```
t <= a + b; // a and b are 4-bit numbers
z <= t + c; // c is a 6-bit number
```

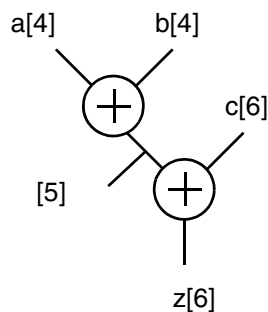
In [Example 3-1](#), three variables are added ($a + b + c$). A temporary variable, t , holds the intermediate result of $a + b$. Suppose t is declared as a 4-bit variable, so the overflow bits from the addition of $a + b$ are truncated. HDL Compiler determines the default structure, which is shown in [Figure 3-2](#).

Figure 3-2 Default Structure With 4-Bit Temporary Variable

Now suppose the addition is performed without a temporary variable ($z = a + b + c$). HDL Compiler determines that 5 bits are needed to store the intermediate result of the addition, so no overflow condition exists. The results of the final addition might be different from the

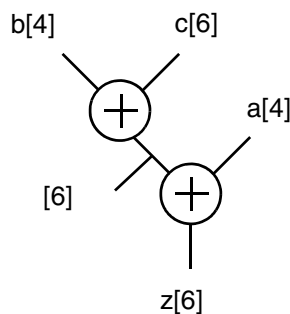
first case, where a 4-bit temporary variable is declared that truncates the result of the intermediate addition. Therefore, these two structures do not always yield the same result. The structure for the second case is shown in [Figure 3-3](#).

Figure 3-3 Structure With 5-Bit Intermediate Result



Now suppose the expression is optimized for delay and that signal *a* arrives late. Design Compiler restructures the expression so that *b* and *c* are added first. Because *c* is declared as a 6-bit number, Design Compiler determines that the intermediate result must be stored in a 6-bit variable. The structure for this case, where signal *a* arrives late, is shown in [Figure 3-4](#). Note how this expression differs from the structure in [Figure 3-2](#).

Figure 3-4 Structure for Late-Arriving Signal



Divide Operators

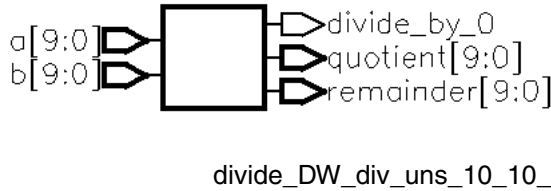
HDL Compiler supports division where the operands are not constant, such as in [Example 3-2](#), by instantiating a DesignWare divider, as shown in [Figure 3-5](#). Note that when you compile a design that contains an inferred divider, you must have a DesignWare license in addition to the DesignWare-Basic license.

Example 3-2 Divide Operator

```

module divide (a, b, z);
  input  [9:0] a, b;
  output [8:0] z;
  assign z= a / b;
endmodule

```

Figure 3-5 DesignWare Divider

Sign Conversions

When reading a design that contains signed expressions and assignments, HDL Compiler warns you when there are sign mismatches by outputting a VER-318 warning.

Note that HDL Compiler does not issue a signed/unsigned conversion warning (VER-318) if all of the following conditions are true:

- The conversion is necessary only for constants in the expression.
- The width of the constant would not change as a result of the conversion.
- The most significant bit (MSB) of the constant is zero (nonnegative).

Consider [Example 3-3](#). Even though HDL Compiler implicitly converts the type of the constant 1, which is signed by default, to unsigned, the VER-318 warning is not issued because these three conditions are true. Integer constants are treated as signed types by default. Integers are considered to have signed values.

Example 3-3 Mixed Unsigned and Signed Types

```

input  [3:0] a, b;
output [5:0] z;
assign z = a + b + 1;

```

The VER-318 warning indicates that HDL Compiler has implicitly converted

- An unsigned expression to a signed expression
 - A signed expression to an unsigned expression
- or, it has assigned

- An unsigned right side to a signed left side
- A signed right side to an unsigned left side

For example, in this code,

```
reg signed [3:0] a;
reg [7:0] c;

a = 4'sb1010;
c = a+7'b0101011;
```

an implicit signed/unsigned conversion occurs—the signed operand `a` is converted to an unsigned value, and the VER-318 warning “signed to unsigned conversion occurs” is issued. Note that `a` will not be sign-extended. This behavior is in accordance with the Verilog 2001 standard.

When explicit type casting is used, conversion warnings are not issued. For example, in the preceding code, to force `a` to be unsigned, you assign `c` as follows:

```
c = $unsigned(a)+7'b0101011;
```

no warning is issued.

Consider the following assignment:

```
reg [7:0] a;

a = 4'sb1010;
```

A VER-318 warning “signed to unsigned assignment occurs” is issued when this code is read. Although the left side is unsigned, the right side will still be sign-extended—in other words, `a` will have the value `8'b11111010` after the assignment.

If a line contains more than one implicit conversion, such as the expression assigned to `c` in the following example, only one warning message is issued.

```
reg signed [3:0] a;
reg signed [3:0] b;
reg signed [7:0] c;

c = a+4'b0101+(b*3'b101);
```

In this example, `a` and `b` are converted to unsigned values, and because the whole right side is unsigned, assigning the right side value to `c` will also result in the warning.

The code in [Example 3-4](#) generates eight VER-318 warnings. The eight VER-318 warnings generated by the code in [Example 3-4](#) are shown in [Example 3-5](#).

Example 3-4 Modules m1 Through m9

```

1 module m1 (a, z);
2   input signed [0:3] a;
3   output signed [0:4] z;
4   assign z = a;
5 endmodule
6
7
8 module m2 (a, z);
9   input signed [0:2] a;
10  output [0:4] z;
11  assign z = a + 3'sb111;
12 endmodule
13
14
15 module m3 (a, z);
16   input [0:3] a;
17   output z;
18   reg signed [0:3] x;
19   reg z;
20   always begin
21     x = a;
22     z = x < 4'sd5; /* note that x is signed and compared to 4'sd5,
which is also signed, but the result of the comparison is put into z, an
unsigned reg. This appears to be a sign mismatch; however, no VER-318
warning is issued for this line because comparison results are always
considered unsigned. This is true for all relational operators. */
23   end
24 endmodule
25
26
27 module m4 (in1, in2, out);
28   input signed [7:0] in1, in2;
29   output signed [7:0] out;
30   assign out = in1 * in2;
31 endmodule
32
33
34 module m5 (a, b, z);
35   input [1:0] a, b;
36   output [2:0] z;
37   wire signed [1:0] x = a;
38   wire signed [1:0] y = b;
39   assign z = x - y;
40 endmodule
41
42
43 module m6 (a, z);
44   input [3:0] a;
45   output z;
46   reg signed [3:0] x;
47   wire z;
48   always @(a) begin

```

```

49     x = a;
50 end
51 assign z = x < -4'sd5;
52 endmodule
53
54 module m7 (in1, in2, lt, in1_lt_64);
55     input  signed [7:0] in1, in2;          // two signed inputs
56     output lt, in1_lt_64;
57     assign lt  = in1 < in2;                // comparison is signed
58
59     // using a signed constant results in a signed comparison
60
61     assign in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'sd64;
62 endmodule
63
64
65 module m8 (in1, in2, lt);
66
67 // in1 is signed but in2 is unsigned
68
69     input signed [7:0] in1;
70     input          [7:0] in2;
71     output lt;
72     wire uns_lt, uns_in1_lt_64;
73
74 /* comparison is unsigned because of the sign mismatch; in1 is
signed
but in2 is unsigned */
75
76     assign uns_lt = in1 < in2;
77
78 /* Unsigned constant causes unsigned comparison; so negative values
of
in1 would compare as larger than 8'd64 */
79
80     assign uns_in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'd64;
81     assign lt = uns_lt + uns_in1_lt_64;
82
83 endmodule
84
85
86
87 module m9 (in1, in2, lt);
88     input signed [7:0] in1;
89     input          [7:0] in2;
90     output lt;
91     assign lt = in1 < $signed ({1'b0, in2});
92 endmodule
93
94

```

The eight VER-318 warnings generated by the code in [Example 3-4](#) are shown in [Example 3-5](#).

Example 3-5 Sign Conversion Warnings for m1 Through m9

```
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:11: signed to unsigned
assignment
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:21: unsigned to signed
assignment
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:21: 'a' is read but does
not
appear in the sensitivity list of this 'always' block. (ELAB-292)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:37: unsigned to signed
assignment
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:38: unsigned to signed
assignment
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:39: signed to unsigned
assignment
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:49: unsigned to signed
assignment
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:76: signed to unsigned
conversion
occurs. (VER-318)
Warning: /usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/warn-sign.v:80: signed to unsigned
conversion
occurs. (VER-318)
Presto compilation completed successfully.
Current design is now '/usr/00budgeting/vhdl-mr/m1.db:m1'
m1 m2 m3 m4 m5 m6 m7 m8 m9
```

[Table 3-2](#) describes what caused the warnings listed in [Example 3-5](#).

Table 3-2 Causes of Sign Mismatch Warnings (VER-318)

Module	Cause of warning
m1, m4, and m7	These modules do not have any sign conversion warnings because the signs are consistently applied.
m9	This module does not generate a VER-318 warning because, even though in1 and in2 are sign mismatched, the casting operator is used to force the sign on in2. When a casting operator is used, no warning is returned when sign conversion occurs.

Table 3-2 Causes of Sign Mismatch Warnings (VER-318) (Continued)

Module	Cause of warning
m2	In this module, a is signed and added to 3'sb111, which is signed and has a value of -1. However, z is not signed, so the value of the expression on the right, which is signed, will be converted to unsigned when assigned to z. The VER-318 warning "signed to unsigned assignment occurs" is issued.
m3	In this module, a is unsigned but put into the signed reg x. Here a will be converted to signed, and a VER-318 warning "unsigned to signed assignment occurs" is issued. Note that in line 22 ($z = x < 4'sd5$) x is signed and compared to 4'sd5, which is also signed, but the result of the comparison is put into z, an unsigned reg. This appears to be a sign mismatch; however, no VER-318 warning is issued for this line because comparison results are always considered unsigned. This is true for all relational operators.
m5	In this module, a and b are unsigned but they are assigned to x and y, which are signed. Two VER-318 warnings "unsigned to signed assignment occurs" are issued. In addition, y is subtracted from x and assigned to z, which is unsigned. Here the VER-318 warning "signed to unsigned assignment occurs" is also issued.
m6	In this module, a is unsigned but put into the signed register x. The VER-318 warning "unsigned to signed assignment occurs" is issued.
m8	In this module, in1 is signed and compared with in2, which is unsigned, and 8'd64, which is an unsigned value. For each expression, the VER-318 warning "signed to unsigned conversion occurs" is issued.

Multiplexing Logic

Multiplexers are commonly modeled with case statements. If statements are occasionally used and are usually more difficult to code. To implement multiplexing logic, HDL Compiler uses SELECT_OP cells which Design Compiler maps to combinational logic or multiplexers in the technology library. If you want Design Compiler to preferentially map multiplexing logic to multiplexers—or multiplexer trees—in your technology library, you must infer MUX_OP cells.

The following sections describe multiplexer inference:

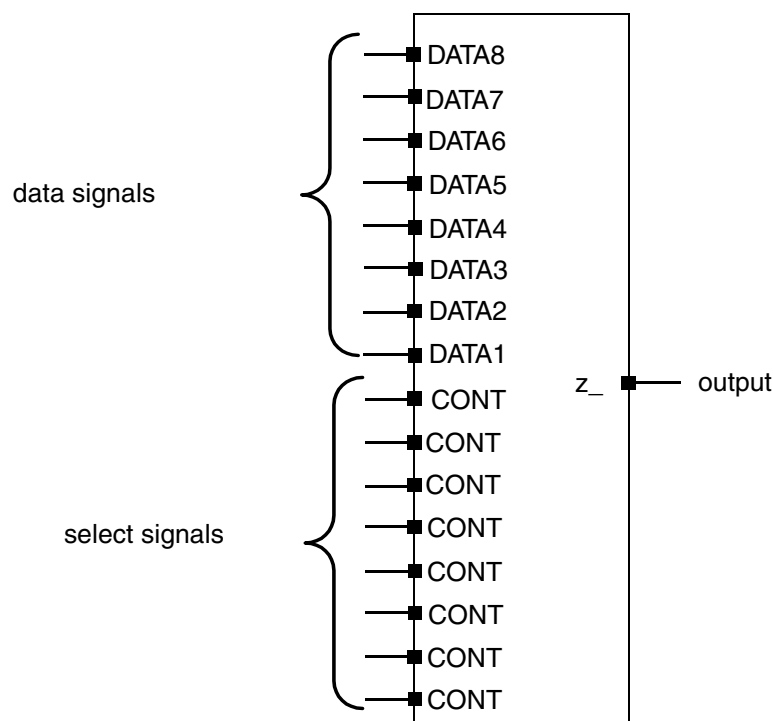
- [SELECT_OP Inference](#)
- [One-Hot Multiplexer Inference](#)
- [MUX_OP Inference](#)

- [MUX_OP Inference Examples](#)
- [MUX_OP Inference Limitations](#)

SELECT_OP Inference

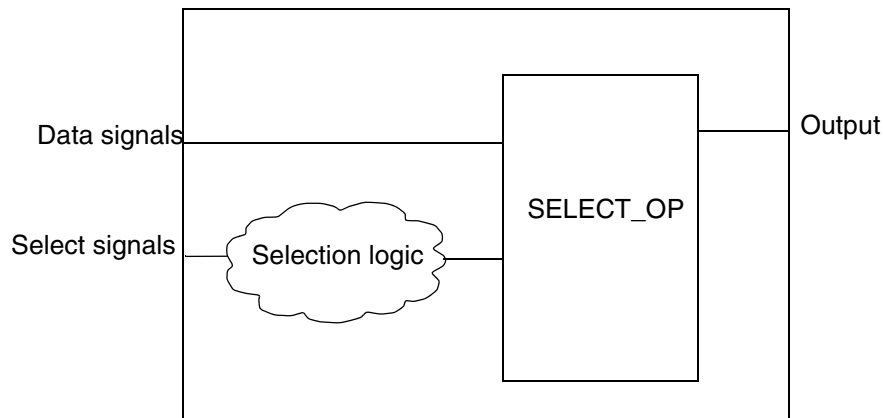
By default, HDL Compiler uses SELECT_OP components to implement conditional operations implied by if and case statements. An example of a SELECT_OP cell implementation for an 8-bit data signal is shown in [Figure 3-6](#).

Figure 3-6 SELECT_OP Implementation for an 8-bit Data Signal



For an 8-bit data signal, 8 selection bits are needed.
This is called a one-hot implementation.

SELECT_OPs behave like one-hot multiplexers; the control lines are mutually exclusive, and each control input allows the data on the corresponding data input to pass to the output of the cell. To determine which data signal is chosen, HDL Compiler generates selection logic, as shown in [Figure 3-7](#).

Figure 3-7 HDL Compiler Output—SELECT_OP and Selection Logic

Depending on the design constraints, Design Compiler implements the SELECT_OP with either combinational logic or multiplexer cells from the technology library.

One-Hot Multiplexer Inference

As mentioned in the previous section, Design Compiler implements SELECT_OPs with either combinational logic or multiplexer cells from the technology library. You can force Design Compiler to map the SELECT_OP cell to a one-hot multiplexer in the technology library by using the `infer_onehot_mux` directive and the coding style shown in [Example 3-6](#) or [Example 3-7](#).

Example 3-6 One-Hot Multiplexer Coding Style One

```

case (1'b1) //synopsys full_case parallel_case infer_onehot_mux
sel1 : out = in1;
sel2 : out = in2;
sel3 : out = in3;

```

Example 3-7 One-Hot Multiplexer Coding Style Two

```

case({sel3, sel2, sel1}) //synopsys full_case parallel_case
infer_onehot_mux
3'b001: out = in1;
3'b010: out = in2;
3'b100: out = in3;
default: out = 1'b0;
endcase

```

Note that the `parallel_case` and `full_case` directives are required.

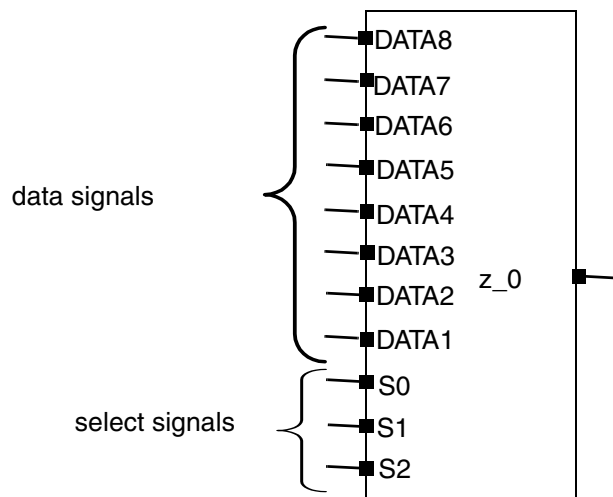
For optimization details and library requirements, see the *Design Compiler User Guide*.

MUX_OP Inference

If you want Design Compiler to preferentially map multiplexing logic in your RTL to multiplexers—or multiplexer trees—in your technology library, you need to infer MUX_OP cells. These cells are hierarchical generic cells optimized to use the minimum number of select signals. They are typically faster than the SELECT_OP cell, which uses a one-hot implementation. Although MUX_OP cells improve design speed, they also might increase area. During optimization, Design Compiler preferentially maps MUX_OP cells to multiplexers—or multiplexer trees—from the technology library, unless the area costs are prohibitive, in which case combinational logic is used. For information on how Design Compiler maps MUX_OP cells to multiplexers in the target technology library, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

[Figure 3-8](#) shows a MUX_OP cell for an 8-bit data signal. Notice that the MUX_OP cell needs only three control lines to select an output; compare this with the SELECT_OP cell, which needed eight control lines.

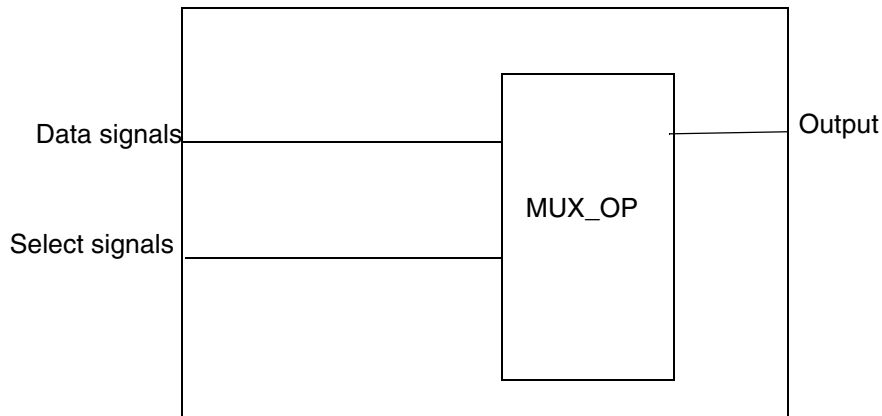
Figure 3-8 MUX_OP Generic Cell for an 8-bit Data Signal



For an 8-bit word, only 3 selection bits are needed.

The MUX_OP cell contains internal selection logic to determine which data signal is chosen; HDL Compiler does not need to generate any selection logic, as shown in [Figure 3-9](#).

Figure 3-9 HDL Compiler Output—MUX_OP Generic Cell for 8-Bit Data



Use the following methods to infer MUX_OP cells:

- To infer MUX_OP cells for a specific case or if statement, use the `infer_mux` directive. Additionally, you must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input “A” but not the negation of input “A”. If statements have special coding considerations, for details [“Considerations When Using If Statements to Code For MUX_OPs” on page 3-22](#).

```
always@(SEL) begin
case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux
  2'b00: DOUT <= DIN[0];
  2'b01: DOUT <= DIN[1];
  2'b10: DOUT <= DIN[2];
  2'b11: DOUT <= DIN[3];
endcase
```

Note that the case statement must be parallel; otherwise, a MUX_OP is not inferred and an error is reported. The `parallel_case` directive does not make a case statement truly parallel. This directive can also be set on a block to direct HDL Compiler to infer MUX_OPs for all case statements in that block. Use the following syntax:

```
// synopsys infer_mux block_label_list
```

- To infer MUX_OP cells for all case and if statements, use the `hdl_infer_mux` variable. Additionally, your coding style must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input “A” but not the negation of input “A”.

By default, if you set the `infer_mux` directive on a case statement that has two or more synthetic (DesignWare) operators as data inputs, HDL Compiler generates an ELAB-370 warning and does not infer a MUX_OP because you would lose the benefit of resource sharing.

You can further customize your MUX_OP implementation with the following variables: `hdlin_mux_size_limit`, `hdlin_mux_size_min`, and `hdlin_mux_oversize_ratio`.

To ensure that MUX_OP cells are mapped to MUX technology cells, you must apply a `size_only` attribute to the cells to prevent logic decomposition in later optimization steps. You can set the `size_only` attribute on each MUX_OP manually or allow the tool to set it automatically. The automatic behavior can be controlled by the `hdlin_mux_size_only` variable. The following options are valid for `hdlin_mux_size_only`:

- 0
Specifies that no cells receive the `size_only` attribute.
- 1 (the default)
Specifies that MUX_OP cells that are generated with the RTL `infer_mux` pragma and that are on set/reset signals receive the `size_only` attribute.
- 2
Specifies that all MUX_OP cells that are generated with the RTL `infer_mux` pragma receive the `size_only` attribute.
- 3
Specifies that all MUX_OP cells on set/reset signals receive the `size_only` attribute: for example, MUX_OP cells that are generated by the `hdlin_infer_mux` variable set to `all`.
- 4
Specifies that all MUX_OP cells receive the `size_only` attribute: for example, MUX_OP cells that are generated by the `hdlin_infer_mux` variable set to `all`.

By default, the `hdlin_mux_size_only` variable is set to 1, meaning that MUX_OP cells that are generated with the RTL `infer_mux` pragma and that are on set/reset signals receive the `size_only` attribute.

Note:

If you want to use the multiplexer inference feature, the target technology library must contain at least a 2-to-1 multiplexer.

For detailed information about MUX_OP components, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

MUX_OP Inference Examples

In [Example 3-8](#), two MUX_OPs and one SELECT_OP are inferred, as follows:

- For the first always block, the `infer_mux` directive is set on the case statement, which causes HDL Compiler to infer a MUX_OP.
- For the second always block, there are two case statements.
 - For the first case statement, a SELECT_OP is inferred. This is the default inference.
 - However, the second case statement has the `infer_mux` directive set on it, which causes HDL Compiler to infer the MUX_OP cell.

Example 3-8 Two MUX_OPs and One SELECT_OP Inferred

```
module test_muxop_selectop (DIN1, DIN2, DIN3, SEL1, SEL2,
SEL3, DOUT1,DOUT2, DOUT3); input [7:0] DIN1, DIN2; input
[3:0] DIN3; input [2:0] SEL1, SEL2; input [1:0] SEL3;

output DOUT1, DOUT2, DOUT3;

reg DOUT1, DOUT2, DOUT3;

always @ (SEL1 or DIN1)
begin
  case (SEL1) //synopsys infer_mux
    3'b000: DOUT1 <= DIN1[0];
    3'b001: DOUT1 <= DIN1[1];
    3'b010: DOUT1 <= DIN1[2];
    3'b011: DOUT1 <= DIN1[3];
    3'b100: DOUT1 <= DIN1[4];
    3'b101: DOUT1 <= DIN1[5];
    3'b110: DOUT1 <= DIN1[6];
    3'b111: DOUT1 <= DIN1[7];

  endcase
end

always @ (SEL2 or SEL3 or DIN2 or DIN3)
begin
  case (SEL2)
    3'b000: DOUT2 <= DIN2[0];
    3'b001: DOUT2 <= DIN2[1];
    3'b010: DOUT2 <= DIN2[2];
    3'b011: DOUT2 <= DIN2[3];
    3'b100: DOUT2 <= DIN2[4];
    3'b101: DOUT2 <= DIN2[5];
    3'b110: DOUT2 <= DIN2[6];
    3'b111: DOUT2 <= DIN2[7];

  endcase
end
```

```

    case (SEL3) //synopsys infer_mux
    2'b00: DOUT3 <= DIN3[0];
    2'b01: DOUT3 <= DIN3[1];
    2'b10: DOUT3 <= DIN3[2];
    2'b11: DOUT3 <= DIN3[3];

    endcase
end

endmodule

```

[Example 3-9](#) shows the MUX_OP inference report for the code in [Example 3-8](#). [Figure 3-10 on page 3-20](#) shows a representation of the HDL Compiler implementation. The tool displays inference reports by default. If you do not want these reports displayed, you can turn them off using the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Elaboration Reports” on page 1-6](#).

Example 3-9 MUX_OP Inference Report

Statistics for case statements in always block at line 31 in file ...

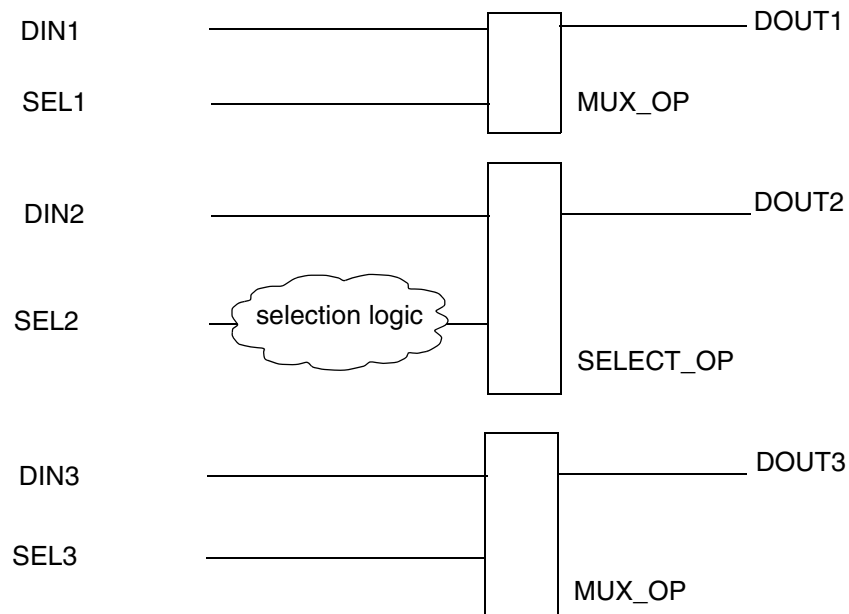
Line	full/ parallel
33	auto/auto

Statistics for MUX_OPs

block name/line	Inputs	Outputs	# sel inputs	MB
test_muxop_selectop/13	8	1	3	N
test_muxop_selectop/47	4	1	2	N

The first column of the MUX_OP report indicates the block that contains the case statement for which the MUX_OP is inferred. The line number of the case statement in Verilog also appears in this column. The remaining columns indicate the number of inputs, outputs, and select lines on the inferred MUX_OP.

Figure 3-10 HDL Compiler Implementation



Example 3-10 uses the `infer_mux` directive for a specific block.

Example 3-10 MUX_OP Inference for a Block

```
module muxtwo(DIN1, DIN2, SEL1, SEL2, DOUT1, DOUT2);
  input [7:0] DIN1;
  input [3:0] DIN2;
  input [2:0] SEL1;
  input [1:0] SEL2;
  output DOUT1, DOUT2;
  reg DOUT1, DOUT2;

  //synopsys infer_mux "blk1"

  always @(SEL1 or SEL2 or DIN1 or DIN2)
  begin: blk1
    // this case statement infers an 8-to-1 MUX_OP
    case (SEL1)
      3'b000: DOUT1 <= DIN1[0];
      3'b001: DOUT1 <= DIN1[1];
      3'b010: DOUT1 <= DIN1[2];
      3'b011: DOUT1 <= DIN1[3];
      3'b100: DOUT1 <= DIN1[4];
      3'b101: DOUT1 <= DIN1[5];
      3'b110: DOUT1 <= DIN1[6];
      3'b111: DOUT1 <= DIN1[7];
    endcase
  end
```



```

// this case statement infers a 4-to-1 MUX_OP
case (SEL2)
  2'b00: DOUT2 <= DIN2[0];
  2'b01: DOUT2 <= DIN2[1];
  2'b10: DOUT2 <= DIN2[2];
  2'b11: DOUT2 <= DIN2[3];
endcase
end
endmodule

```

Example 3-11 uses the `infer_mux` directive for a specific case statement. This case statement contains eight unique values, and HDL Compiler infers an 8-to-1 MUX_OP.

Example 3-11 *MUX_OP Inference for a Specific case Statement*

```

module mux8to1 (DIN, SEL, DOUT);
  input [7:0] DIN;
  input [2:0] SEL;
  output DOUT;
  reg DOUT;
  always@(SEL or DIN)
  begin: blk1
    case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux
      3'b000: DOUT <= DIN[0];
      3'b001: DOUT <= DIN[1];
      3'b010: DOUT <= DIN[2];
      3'b011: DOUT <= DIN[3];
      3'b100: DOUT <= DIN[4];
      3'b101: DOUT <= DIN[5];
      3'b110: DOUT <= DIN[6];
      3'b111: DOUT <= DIN[7];
    endcase
  end
endmodule

```

In **Example 3-12** a MUX_OP is inferred by using an if-else statement. This coding style requires the control expression to be a simple variable. If statements have special coding considerations, for details see [“Considerations When Using If Statements to Code For MUX_OPs” on page 3-22](#).

Example 3-12 *MUX_OP Inference Using if-else Statement*

```

module test ( input sel,a,b, output reg dout);
  always @(*)
  if(sel) //synopsys infer_mux
    dout = a;
  else
    dout = b;
endmodule

```

In **Example 3-13** a MUX_OP is inferred by using a “?” operator. This coding style requires you to place the `infer_mux` directive just after “?” construct.

Example 3-13 MUX_OP Inference for a Specific case Statement

```

module test (sig, A, B, C);
  input A, B, C;
  output sig;
  assign sig = A ? /* synopsys infer_mux */ B :C ;
endmodule

```

Considerations When Using If Statements to Code For MUX_OPs

In general, good coding practice is to use case statements when coding multiplexing logic because the if statement coding style can result in potentially slower, larger designs and reduce coding flexibility. These issues are described in this section.

In order for HDL Compiler to infer MUX_OPs through if-else statements, you must use very simple expression(s), such as those shown in [Example 3-14](#). From this code, the tool can infer a 4-to-1 MUX_OP cell.

Example 3-14 Tool Infers MUX_OP From If-Else Statements

```

module mux4l (a, b, c, d, sel, dout);
  input a, b, c, d;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output reg dout;

  always@(*) begin
    if (sel == 2'b00) /* synopsys infer_mux */
    begin
      dout <= a;
    end
    else if (sel == 2'b01) begin
      dout <= b;
    end
    else if (sel == 2'b10) begin
      dout <= c;
    end
    else if (sel == 2'b11) begin
      dout <= d;
    end
  end

end

endmodule

```

In [Example 3-14](#), the code specifies all possible conditions and the tool builds the most efficient logic, a 4-to-1 MUX_OP cell. However, when your if statements don't cover all possible conditions, as in [Example 3-15](#), the tool does not infer optimum logic. Instead, it infers a 4-to-1 multiplexer even though there are only two branches. In this case, the optimum logic is a 2-to-1 MUX_OP cell, but the tool builds a 4-to-1 MUX_OP.

Example 3-15 Tool Infers Inefficient 4:1 MUX_OP From If-Else Statements

```

module mux21 (a, b, sel, dout);
  input  a, b;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output reg dout;

  always@(*) begin
    if (sel == 2'b00) /* synopsys infer_mux */
    begin
      dout <= a;
    end
    else begin
      dout <= b;
    end
  end
end
endmodule

```

In order to infer a 2-to-1 MUX_OP cell, you must re-code the design in [Example 3-15](#) to the style shown in [Example 3-16](#).

Example 3-16 Tool Infers 2:1 MUX_OP From If-Else Statements

```

module mux21 (a, b, sel, dout);
  input  a, b;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output reg dout;

  reg tmp;

  always@(*) begin
    tmp = (sel == 2'b11) ? 1'b1 : 1'b0;
    if (tmp) /* synopsys infer_mux */
    begin
      dout <= a;
    end
    else begin
      dout <= b;
    end
  end
end
endmodule

```

Another difficulty with using if statements is limited coding flexibility. Expressions like the one used in [Example 3-17](#) are too complex for HDL Compiler to handle. In [Example 3-17](#), HDL Compiler does not infer a MUX_OP cell even when the `infer_mux` directive is used. Instead, the tool infers a SELECT_OP to build the multiplexing logic. In order to infer a 2-to-1 MUX_OP cell, you must re-code to extract the expression of the if statement and assign it to a variable so that the behavior is like a case statement.

Example 3-17 Tool Cannot Infer MUX_OP From Complex Expressions

```

module mux21 (a, b, c, d, sel, dout);

```

```

input a, b, c, d;
input [1:0] sel;
output reg dout;

always@(*) begin
    if (sel[0] == 1'b0) /* synopsys infer_mux */
    begin
        dout <= a & b;
    end
    else begin
        dout <= d & c;
    end
end
endmodule

```

To further illustrate the expression coding requirements, consider [Example 3-18](#). From the code in [Example 3-18](#), the tool infers a SELECT_OP even though the `infer_mux` directive is used. To enable the tool to infer a MUX_OP cell, you must re-code the design in [Example 3-18](#) to the style shown in [Example 3-19](#).

Example 3-18 Tool Infers SELECT_OP for Multiplexing Logic From Complex Expressions

```

module mux4l (a, b, c, d, dout);
    input  a, b, c, d;
    output reg dout;

    always@(*) begin
        if (a == 1'b0 && b == 1'b0) /* synopsys infer_mux */
        begin
            dout <= c & d;
        end
        else if (a == 1'b0 && b == 1'b1) begin
            dout <= c | d;
        end
        else if (a == 1'b1 && b == 1'b0) begin
            dout <= !c & d;
        end
        else if (a == 1'b1 && b == 1'b1) begin
            dout <= c | !d;
        end
    end
end
endmodule

```

Example 3-19 Tool Infers MUX_OP for Multiplexing Logic

```

module mux4l (a, b, c, d, dout);
    input  a, b, c, d;
    output reg dout;
    reg [1:0] tmp;

```

```

always@(*) begin
    tmp = {a, b};
    if (tmp == 2'b00) /* synopsys infer_mux */
    begin
        dout <= c & d;
    end
    else if (tmp == 2'b01) begin
        dout <= c | d;
    end
    else if (tmp == 2'b10) begin
        dout <= !c & d;
    end
    else if (tmp == 2'b11) begin
        dout <= c | !d;
    end
end
endmodule

```

A good practice, whenever possible, is to use case statements instead of if-else statements when you want to infer MUX_OP cells.

MUX_OP Inference Limitations

HDL Compiler does not infer MUX_OP cells for

- case statements in while loops
- case statements embedded in an always block
- case or if statements that use complex control expressions

You must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input “A” but not the negation of input “A.”

MUX_OP cells are inferred for incompletely specified case statements, such as case statements that

- Contain an if statement that covers more than one value
- Have a missing case statement branch or a missing assignment in a case statement branch
- Contain don't care values (x or "-")

In these cases, the logic might not be optimum, because other optimizations are disabled when you infer MUX_OP cells under these conditions. For example, HDL Compiler optimizes default branches. If the `infer_mux` attribute is on the case statement, this optimization is not done.

When inferring a MUX_OP for an incompletely specified case statement, HDL Compiler generates the following ELAB-304 warning:

```
Warning: Case statement has an infer_mux attribute and a
default branch or incomplete mapping. This can cause
nonoptimal logic if a mux is inferred. (ELAB-304)
```

MUX_OP Components With Variable Indexing

HDL Compiler generates MUX_OP components to implement indexing into a data variable, using a variable address. For example,

```
module E(data, addr, out);
  input [7:0] data;
  input [2:0] addr;
  output out;
  assign out = data[addr];
endmodule
```

In this example, a MUX_OP is used to implement data[addr] because the subscript, addr, is not a known constant.

Modeling Complex MUX Inferences: Bit and Memory Accesses

In addition to inferring multiplexers from case statements, you can infer them for bit or memory accesses. See [Example 3-20](#) through [Example 3-21](#) for templates. By default, HDL Compiler uses a MUX_OP for bit and memory access.

Example 3-20 MUX Inference for Bit Access

```
module mux_infer_bit (x, a, y);
  input [15:0] x;
  input [3:0] a;
  output y;
  reg y;
  always @(x,a)
  begin
    y = x[a];
  end
endmodule
```

Example 3-21 MUX Inference for Memory Access

```

module mux_infer_memory (rw, addr, data);
  input rw;
  input [3:0] addr;
  inout [15:0] data;
  reg [3:0] x [15:0];

  assign data = (rw) ? x[addr] : 16'hz ;

  always @(rw, data)
    if (!rw) x[addr] = data ;

endmodule

```

Bit-Truncation Coding for DC Ultra Datapath Extraction

Datapath design is commonly used in applications that contain extensive data manipulation, such as 3-D, multimedia, and digital signal processing (DSP). Datapath extraction transforms arithmetic operators into datapath blocks to be implemented by a datapath generator.

The DC Ultra tool enables datapath extraction after timing-driven resource sharing and explores various datapath and resource-sharing options during compile.

Note:

This feature is not available in DC Expert. See the Design Compiler documentation for datapath optimization details.

As of release 2002.05, DC Ultra datapath optimization supports datapath extraction of expressions containing truncated operands unless both of the following two conditions exist:

- The operands have upper bits truncated. For example, if *d* is 16-bits wide, *d*[7:0] truncates the upper eight bits.
- The width of the resulting expression is greater than the width of the truncated operand. For example, in the following statement, if *e* is 9-bits wide, the width of *e* is greater than the width of the truncated operand *d*[7:0]:

```
assign e = c + d[7:0];
```

Note that both conditions must be true to prevent extraction. For lower-bit truncations, the datapath is extracted in all cases.

Bit truncation can be either explicit or implicit. [Table](#) describes both types of truncation.

Truncation type	Description
Explicit bit truncation	<p>An explicit upper-bit truncation is one where the user specifies the bit range for truncation.</p> <p>The following code indicates explicit upper-bit truncation of operand A:</p> <pre>wire [i : 0] A; out = A [j : 0]; // where j < i</pre>
Implicit bit truncation	<p>An implicit upper-bit truncation is one that occurs through assignment. Unlike with explicit upper-bit truncation, here the user does not explicitly define the range for truncation.</p> <p>The following code indicates implicit upper-bit truncation of operand Y:</p> <pre>input [7 : 0] A,B; wire [14:0] Y = A * B;</pre> <p>Because A and B are each 8 bits wide, their product will be 16 bits wide. However, Y, which is only 15 bits wide, is assigned to be the 16-bit product, when the most significant bit (MSB) of the product is implicitly truncated. In this example, the MSB is the carryout bit.</p>

To see how bit truncation affects datapath extraction, consider the code in [Example 3-22](#).

Example 3-22 *Design test1: Truncated Operand Is Extracted*

```
module test1 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [7:0] e;
  wire [14:0] d;
  assign d = a * b; // <--- implicit upper-bit truncation
  assign e = c + d; // width of e is less than d
endmodule
```

In [Example 3-22](#), the upper bits of the $a * b$ operation are implicitly truncated when assigned to d, and the width of e is less than the width of d. This code meets the first condition on [page 27](#) but does not meet the second. Because both conditions must be met to prevent extraction, this code is extracted.

Consider the code in [Example 3-23](#). Here bit truncation prevents extraction.

Example 3-23 Design test2: Truncated Operand Is Not Extracted

```

module test2 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [8:0] e; // <--- e is 9-bits wide
  wire [7:0] d;   // <--- d is 8-bits wide
  assign d = a * b; // <---implicit upper-bit truncation
  assign e = c + d; // <---width of e is greater than d
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-23](#), the upper bits of the $a * b$ operation are implicitly truncated when assigned to d , and the width of e is greater than the width of d . This code meets both the first and second conditions; the code is not extracted.

Consider the code in [Example 3-24](#). Here bit truncation prevents extraction.

Example 3-24 Design test3: Truncated Operand Is Not Extracted

```

module test3 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [8:0] e;
  wire [15:0] d; // <--- d is 16-bits wide
  assign d = a * b; // <--- d is not truncated
  assign e = c + d[7:0]; // <--- explicit upper-bit truncation of d
                        // width of e is greater than d[7:0]
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-24](#), the upper bits of d are explicitly truncated, and the width of e is greater than the width of d . This code meets both the first and second conditions; the code is not extracted.

Consider the code in [Example 3-25](#). Here bit truncation does not prevent extraction.

Example 3-25 Design test4: Truncated Operand Is Extracted

```

module test4 (a,b,c,e);
  input [7:0] a,b,c;
  output [9:0] e;
  wire [15:0] d;
  assign d = a * b; // <--- No implicit upper-bit truncation
  assign e = c + d[15:8]; // <---"explicit lower" bit truncation of d
endmodule

```

In [Example 3-25](#), the lower bits of d are explicitly truncated. For expressions involving lower-bit truncations, the truncated operands are extracted regardless of the bit-widths of the truncated operands and of the expression result; this code is extracted.

Latches in Combinational Logic

Sometimes your Verilog source can imply combinational feedback paths or latches in synthesized logic. This happens when a signal or a variable in a combinational logic block (an always block without a posedge or negedge clock statement) is not fully specified. A variable or signal is fully specified when it is assigned under all possible conditions.

When a variable is not assigned a value for all paths through an always block, the variable is conditionally assigned and a latch is inferred for the variable to store its previous value. To avoid these latches, make sure that the variable is fully assigned in all paths. In [Example 3-26](#), the variable Q is not assigned if GATE equals 1'b0. Therefore, it is conditionally assigned and HDL Compiler creates a latch to hold its previous value.

Example 3-26 Latch Inference Using an if Statement

```
always @ (DATA or GATE) begin
    if (GATE) begin
        Q = DATA;
    end
end
```

[Example 3-27](#) and [Example 3-28](#) show Q fully assigned—Q is assigned 0 when GATE equals 1'b0. Note that [Example 3-27](#) and [Example 3-28](#) are not equivalent to [Example 3-26](#), in which Q holds its previous value when GATE equals 1'b0.

Example 3-27 Avoiding Latch Inference—Method 1

```
always @ (DATA, GATE) begin
    Q = 0;
    if (GATE)
        Q = DATA;
end
```

Example 3-28 Avoiding Latch Inference—Method 2

```
always @ (DATA, GATE) begin
    if (GATE)
        Q = DATA;
    else
        Q = 0;
end
```

The code in [Example 3-29](#) results in a latch because the variable is not fully assigned. To avoid the latch inference, add the following statement before the endcase statement:

```
default: decimal= 10'b0000000000;
```

Example 3-29 Latch Inference Using a case Statement

```
always @(I) begin
  case(I)
    4'h0: decimal= 10'b00000000001;
    4'h1: decimal= 10'b00000000010;
    4'h2: decimal= 10'b00000000100;
    4'h3: decimal= 10'b00000001000;
    4'h4: decimal= 10'b00000010000;
    4'h5: decimal= 10'b00000100000;
    4'h6: decimal= 10'b00001000000;
    4'h7: decimal= 10'b00010000000;
    4'h8: decimal= 10'b01000000000;
    4'h9: decimal= 10'b10000000000;
  endcase
end
```

Latches are also synthesized whenever a for loop statement does not assign a variable for all possible executions of the for loop and when a variable assigned inside the for loop is not assigned a value before entering the enclosing for loop.

4

Modeling Sequential Logic

This chapter describes latch and flip-flop inference in the following sections:

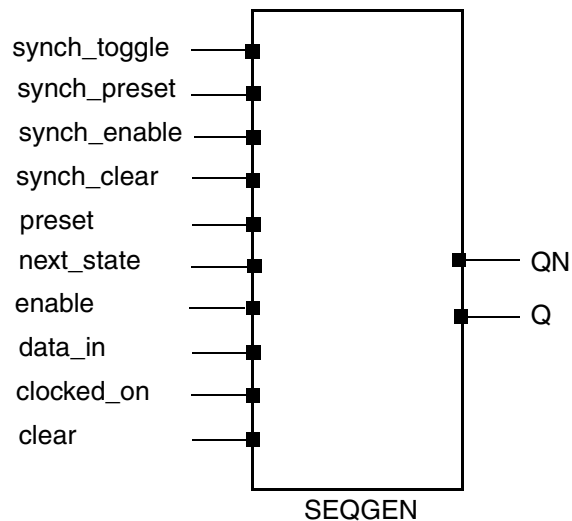
- [Generic Sequential Cells \(SEQGENs\)](#)
- [Inference Reports for Registers](#)
- [Register Inference Guidelines](#)
- [Register Inference Examples](#)

Synopsys uses the term register to refer to a 1-bit memory device, either a latch or a flip-flop. A latch is a level-sensitive memory device. A flip-flop is an edge-triggered memory device.

Generic Sequential Cells (SEQGENs)

When HDL Compiler reads a design, it uses a generic sequential cell (SEQGEN), as shown in [Figure 4-1](#), to represent an inferred flip-flop or latch.

Figure 4-1 SEQGEN Cell and Pin Assignments



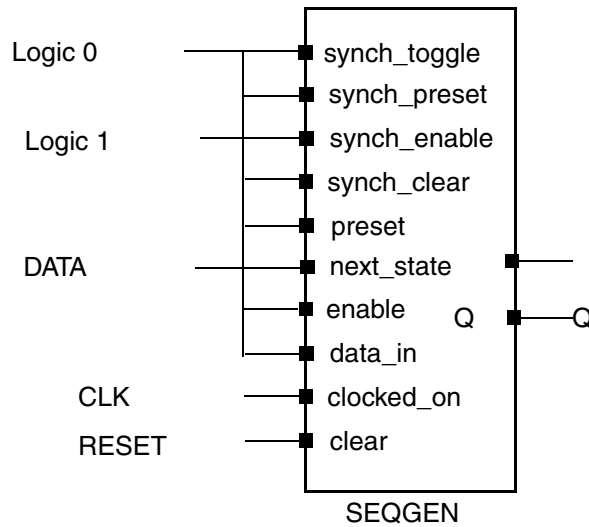
To illustrate how HDL Compiler uses SEQGENs to implement a flip-flop, consider [Example 4-1](#). This code infers a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset.

Example 4-1 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

```
module dff_async_set (DATA, CLK, RESET, Q);
  input DATA, CLK, RESET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(posedge CLK or negedge RESET)
    if (~RESET)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else
      Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

[Figure 4-2](#) shows the SEQGEN implementation.

Figure 4-2 SEQGEN Implementation



Example 4-2 shows the `report_cell` output. Here you see that the HDL Compiler has mapped the inferred flip-flop, `Q_reg` cell, to a SEQGEN.

Example 4-2 `report_cell` Output

```
*****
Report : cell
Design : dff_async_set
Version: V-2003.12
Date   : Wed Sep 15 11:17:48 2004
*****
```

```
Attributes:
  b - black box (unknown)
  h - hierarchical
  n - noncombinational
  r - removable
  u - contains unmapped logic
```

Cell	Reference	Library	Area	Attributes
I_0	GTECH_NOT	gtech	0.000000	u
Q_reg	**SEQGEN**		0.000000	n, u
Total 2 cells			0.000000	

1

Example 4-3 shows the GTECH netlist.

Example 4-3 GTECH Netlist

```

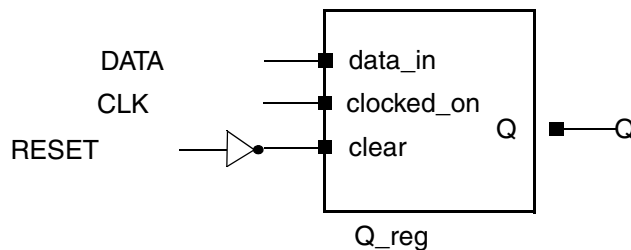
module dff_async_set ( DATA, CLK, RESET, Q );
  input DATA;
  input CLK;
  input RESET;
  output Q;
  wire  \*Logic1* , \*Logic0* , N0;

  \**SEQGEN** Q_reg ( .clear(1'b0), .preset(N0), .next_state(DATA),
    .clocked_on(CLK), .data_in(1'b0), .enable(1'b0), .Q(Q),
    .synch_clear(
      1'b0), .synch_preset(1'b0), .synch_toggle(1'b0),
    .synch_enable(1'b1)
    );
  GTECH_NOT I_0 ( .A(RESET), .Z(N0) );
endmodule

```

After Design Compiler compiles the design, the SEQGEN is mapped to the appropriate flip-flop in the technology library. [Figure 4-3](#) shows an example of an implementation after compile.

Figure 4-3 Design Compiler Implementation

**Note:**

If the technology library does not contain the inferred flip-flop or latch, Design Compiler creates combinational logic for the missing function, if possible. For example, if you infer a D flip-flop with a synchronous set but your target technology library does not contain this type of flip-flop, Design Compiler will create combinational logic for the synchronous set function. Design Compiler cannot create logic to duplicate an asynchronous preset/reset. Your library must contain the sequential cell with the asynchronous control pins. See [“Register Inference Limitations” on page 4-12](#).

Inference Reports for Registers

HDL Compiler provides inference reports that describe each inferred flip-flop or latch. You can enable or disable the generation of inference reports by using the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable. By default, `hdlin_reporting_level` is set to `basic`. When `hdlin_reporting_level` is set to `basic` or `comprehensive`, HDL Compiler generates a report similar to [Example 4-4](#). This basic inference report shows only which type of register was inferred.

Example 4-4 Inference Report for a D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

```
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====
```

In the report, the columns are abbreviated as follows:

- MB represents multibit cell
- AR represents asynchronous reset
- AS represents asynchronous set
- SR represents synchronous reset
- SS represents synchronous set
- ST represents synchronous toggle

A “Y” in a column indicates that the respective control pin was inferred for the register; an “N” indicates that the respective control pin was not inferred for the register. For a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset, there should be a “Y” in the AR column. The report also indicates the type of register inferred, latch or flip-flop, and the name of the inferred cell.

When the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable is set to `verbose`, the report indicates how each pin of the SEQGEN cell is assigned, along with which type of register was inferred.

[Example 4-5](#) shows a verbose inference report.

Example 4-5 Verbose Inference Report for a D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

```
=====
| Register Name | Type | Width | Bus | MB | AR | AS | SR | SS | ST |
=====
| Q_reg        | Flip-flop | 1 | N | N | Y | N | N | N | N |
=====
```

```
Sequential Cell (Q_reg)
  Cell Type: Flip-Flop
  Multibit Attribute: N
  Clock: CLK
  Async Clear: RESET
  Async Set: 0
```

```
Async Load: 0
Sync Clear: 0
Sync Set: 0
Sync Toggle: 0
Sync Load: 1
```

If you do not want inference reports, set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `none`. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Elaboration Reports” on page 1-6](#).

Register Inference Guidelines

When inferring registers, restrict each `always` block so that it infers a single type of memory element and check the inference report to verify that HDL Compiler inferred the correct device.

Register inference guidelines are described in the following sections:

- [Multiple Events in an `always` Block](#)
- [Minimizing Registers](#)
- [Keeping Unloaded Registers](#)
- [Preventing Unwanted Latches: `hdlin_check_no_latch`](#)
- [Register Inference Limitations](#)

Multiple Events in an `always` Block

HDL Compiler supports multiple events in a single `always` block, as shown in [Example 4-6](#).

Example 4-6 Multiple Events in a Single `always` Block

```
module test( data, clk, sum) ;
  input [7:0]data;
  input clk;
  output [7:0]sum;
  reg [7:0]sum;

  always
  begin
    @ (posedge clk)
      sum = data;
    @ (posedge clk)
      sum = sum + data;
    @ (posedge clk) ;
      sum = sum + data;
  end
endmodule
```

Minimizing Registers

An always block that contains a clock edge in the sensitivity list causes HDL Compiler to infer a flip-flop for each variable assigned a value in that always block. It might not be necessary to infer as flip-flops all variables in the always block. Make sure your HDL description builds only as many flip-flops as the design requires.

[Example 4-7](#) infers six flip-flops: three to hold the values of count and one each to hold and_bits, or_bits, and xor_bits. However, the values of the outputs and_bits, or_bits, and xor_bits depend solely on the value of count. Because count is registered, there is no reason to register the three outputs.

Example 4-7 Inefficient Circuit Description With Six Inferred Registers

```
module count (clock, reset, and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits);
  input clock, reset;
  output and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits;
  reg and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits;

  reg [2:0] count;

  always @(posedge clock) begin
    if (reset)
      count = 0;
    else
      count = count + 1;

    and_bits = & count;
    or_bits = | count;
    xor_bits = ^ count;
  end
endmodule
```

[Example 4-8](#) shows the inference report which contains the six inferred flip-flops.

Example 4-8 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
or_bits_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
count_reg	Flip-flop	3	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
xor_bits_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
and_bits_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

To avoid inferring extra registers, you can assign the outputs from within an asynchronous always block. [Example 4-9](#) shows the same function described with two always blocks, one synchronous and one asynchronous, that separate registered or sequential logic from combinational logic. This technique is useful for describing finite state machines. Signal

assignments in the synchronous always block are registered, but signal assignments in the asynchronous always block are not. The code in [Example 4-9](#) creates a more area-efficient design.

Example 4-9 Circuit With Three Inferred Registers

```
module count (clock, reset, and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits);
  input clock, reset;
  output and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits;
  reg and_bits, or_bits, xor_bits;

  reg [2:0] count;

  always @(posedge clock) begin//synchronous block
    if (reset)
      count = 0;
    else
      count = count + 1;
    end
  always @(count) begin//asynchronous block
    and_bits = & count;
    or_bits  = | count;
    xor_bits = ^ count;
  end
endmodule
```

[Example 4-10](#) shows the inference report, which contains three inferred flip-flops.

Example 4-10 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
count_reg	Flip-flop	3	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N

Keeping Unloaded Registers

HDL Compiler does not automatically keep unloaded or undriven flip-flops or latches in a design. These cells are determined to be unnecessary and are removed during optimization. You can use the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable to control which cells to preserve:

- To preserve unloaded/undriven flip-flops and latches in your GTECH netlist, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `all`.
- To preserve all unloaded flip-flops only, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `ff`.
- To preserve all unloaded latches only, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `latch`.

- To preserve all unloaded sequential cells, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `all+loop_variables`.
- To preserve flip-flop cells only, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `ff+loop_variables`.
- To preserve unloaded latch cells only, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables, set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `latch+loop_variables`.

If you want to preserve specific registers, use the `preserve_sequential` directive as shown in [Example 4-11](#) and [Example 4-12](#).

Important:

To preserve unloaded cells through compile, you must set `compile_delete_unloaded_sequential_cells` to `false`. Otherwise, Design Compiler will remove them during optimization.

[Example 4-11](#) uses the `preserve_sequential` directive to save the unloaded cell, `sum2`, and the combinational logic preceding it; note that the combinational logic after it is not saved. If you also want to save the combinational logic after `sum2`, you need to recode design `foo` as shown in [Example 4-12 on page 4-10](#).

Example 4-11 Retains an Unloaded Cell (`sum2`) and Two Adders

```
module foo (in1, in2, in3, out, clk);
  input [0:1] in1, in2, in3;
  input clk;
  output [0:3] out;
  reg sum1, sum2 /* synopsys preserve_sequential */;
  wire [0:4] save;
  always @ (posedge clk)
  begin
    sum1 = in1 + in2;
    sum2 = in1 + in2 + in3; // this combinational logic
                           // is saved
  end
  assign out = ~sum1;
  assign save = sum1 + sum2; // this combinational logic is
                           // not saved because it is after
                           // the saved reg, sum2
endmodule
```

[Example 4-12](#) preserves all combinational logic before `reg save`.

Example 4-12 Retains an Unloaded Cell (save) and Three Adders

```

module foo (in1, in2, in3, out, clk);
  input [0:1] in1, in2, in3;
  input clk;
  output [0:3] out;
  reg sum1, sum2, save /* synopsys preserve_sequential */;
  always @ (posedge clk)
  begin
    sum1 = in1 + in2;
    sum2 = in1 + in2 + in3; // this combinational logic
                           // is saved
  end
  assign out = ~sum1;
  always @ (posedge clk)
  begin
    save = sum1 + sum2; // this combinational logic is saved
  end
endmodule

```

The `preserve_sequential` directive and the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable enable you to preserve cells that are inferred but optimized away by HDL Compiler. If a cell is never inferred, the `preserve_sequential` directive and the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable have no effect because there is no inferred cell to act on. In [Example 4-13](#), `sum2` is not inferred, so `preserve_sequential` does not save `sum2`.

Example 4-13 `preserve_sequential` Has No Effect on Cells Not Inferred

```

module foo (in1, in2, out, clk);
  input [0:1] in1, in2;
  input clk;
  output [0:3] out;
  reg sum1, sum2 /* synopsys preserve_sequential */;
  wire [0:4] save;
  always @ (posedge clk)
  begin
    sum1 = in1 + in2;
  end
  assign out = ~sum1;
  assign save = sum2; // even though the preserve_sequential
                     // directive was placed on sum2
                     // it is not saved by HDL Compiler
                     // because sum2 was never inferred
endmodule

```

Note:

By default, the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable does not preserve variables used in for loops as unloaded registers. To preserve such variables, you must set `hdlin_preserve_sequential` to `ff+loop_variables`.

In addition to preserving sequential cells with the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable and the `preserve_sequential` directive, you can also use the `hdlin_keep_signal_name` variable and the `keep_signal_name` directive. For details, see [“Keeping Signal Names” on page 2-20](#).

Note:

The tool does not distinguish between unloaded cells (those not connected to any output ports) and feedthroughs. See [Example 4-14](#) for a feedthrough.

Example 4-14

```
module test(input clk, input in, output reg out);
  reg tmp1;
  always@(posedge clk)
  begin : storage
    tmp1 = in;
    out = tmp1;
  end
endmodule
```

With `hdlin_preserve_sequential` set to `ff` and `compile_delete_unloaded_sequential_cells` set to `false`, the tool builds two registers; one for the feedthrough cell (temp1) and the other for the loaded cell (temp2) as shown in the following memory inference report:

Example 4-15 Feedthrough Register temp1

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
tmp1_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
out_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

For details about the `hdlin_preserve_sequential` variable, see the man page.

Preventing Unwanted Latches: `hdlin_check_no_latch`

HDL Compiler infers latches when you do not fully specify a signal or a variable in a combinational logic block. (See [“Latches in Combinational Logic” on page 3-30](#).) If you want the tool to issue a warning when it creates a latch, set `hdlin_check_no_latch` to true. The default is false. Consider the declarations in [Example 4-16](#):

Example 4-16

```
reg [1:0] Current_State;
reg [1:0] Next_State;

parameter STATE0 = 00, STATE1 = 01, STATE2 = 10, STATE3 = 11;
```

These declarations are used in state machine coding in [Example 4-17](#).

Example 4-17

```
always @(Current_State)
begin
  case (Current_State)
    STATE0:
      begin
        Next_State = STATE1;
        Data_Out = 2'b00;
      end

    STATE1:
      begin
        Next_State = STATE2;
        Data_Out = 2'b01;
      end

    STATE2:
      begin
        Next_State = STATE3;
        Data_Out = 2'b10;
      end

    STATE3:
      begin
        Next_State = STATE0;
        Data_Out = 2'b11;
      end

  endcase
end
```

If you accidentally omit the base and bit-width, so 10 is viewed as ten and 11 as eleven, HDL Compiler generates latches instead of combinational logic. When the `hdlin_check_no_latch` variable is set to true, HDL Compiler generates a warning alerting you to the unwanted latches. This warning is the last statement HDL Compiler reports after reading in the design.

Register Inference Limitations

Note the following limitations when inferring registers:

- The tool does not support more than one independent if-block when asynchronous behavior is modeled within an always block. If the always block is purely synchronous, multiple independent if-blocks are supported by the tool.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer flip-flops and latches with three-state outputs. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.

- HDL Compiler cannot infer flip-flops with bidirectional pins. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer flip-flops with multiple clock inputs. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer multiplexers. You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- HDL Compiler cannot infer register banks (register files). You must instantiate these components in your Verilog description.
- Although you can instantiate flip-flops with bidirectional pins, Design Compiler interprets these cells as black boxes.
- If you use an if statement to infer D flip-flops, the if statement must occur at the top level of the always block.

The following example is invalid because the if statement does not occur at the top level:

```
always @(posedge clk or posedge reset) begin
    temp = reset;
    if (reset)
        .
end
```

HDL Compiler generates the following message when the if statement does not occur at the top level:

```
Error: The statements in this 'always' block are outside the
scope of the synthesis policy (%s). Only an 'if' statement
is allowed at the top level in this 'always' block. (ELAB-302)
```

Register Inference Examples

The following sections describe register inference examples:

- [Inferring Latches](#)
- [Inferring Flip-Flops](#)

Inferring Latches

HDL Compiler synthesizes latches when variables are conditionally assigned. A variable is conditionally assigned if there is a path that does not explicitly assign a value to that variable.

HDL Compiler can infer D and SR latches. The following sections describe their inference:

- [Basic D Latch](#)
- [D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Use `async_set_reset`](#)
- [D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use `hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset`](#)

Basic D Latch

When you infer a D latch, make sure you can control the gate and data signals from the top-level design ports or through combinational logic. Controllable gate and data signals ensure that simulation can initialize the design. [Example 4-18](#) shows a D latch.

Example 4-18 D Latch Code

```
module d_latch (GATE, DATA, Q);
  input GATE, DATA;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(GATE or DATA)
    if (GATE)
      Q = DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-19](#).

Example 4-19 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	N	-	-	-

D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Use `async_set_reset`

[Example 4-20](#) shows the recommended coding style for an asynchronously reset latch using the `async_set_reset` directive.

Example 4-20 D Latch With Asynchronous Reset: Uses `async_set_reset`

```
module d_latch_async_reset (RESET, GATE, DATA, Q);
  input RESET, GATE, DATA;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  //synopsys async_set_reset "RESET"
  always @ (RESET or GATE or DATA)
    if (~RESET)
      Q = 1'b0;
    else if (GATE)
      Q = DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-21](#).

Example 4-21 Inference Report for D Latch With Asynchronous Reset

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	Y	N	-	-	-

D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use `hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset`

To infer a D latch with an active-low asynchronous set and reset, set the `hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset` variable to true and use the coding style shown in [Example 4-22](#).

Note:

This example uses the `one_cold` directive to prevent priority encoding of the set and reset signals. Although this saves area, it may cause a simulation/synthesis mismatch if both signals are low at the same time.

Example 4-22 D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Uses `hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset`

```
// Set hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset to true.

module d_latch_async (GATE, DATA, RESET, SET, Q);
  input GATE, DATA, RESET, SET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  // synopsys one_cold "RESET, SET"
  always @ (GATE or DATA or RESET or SET)
  begin : infer
    if (!SET)
      Q = 1'b1;
    else if (!RESET)
      Q = 1'b0;
    else if (GATE)
      Q = DATA;
  end
endmodule
```

[Example 4-23](#) shows the inference report.

Example 4-23 Inference Report D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	Y	Y	-	-	-

Inferring Flip-Flops

Synthesis of sequential elements, such as various types of flip-flops, often involves signals that set or reset the sequential device. Synthesis tools can create a sequential cell that has built-in set and reset functionality. This is referred to as set/reset inference. For an example using a flip-flop with reset functionality, consider the following RTL code:

```
module m (input clk, set, reset, d, output reg q);
always @ (posedge clk)
  if (reset)
    q = 1'b0;
  else
    q = d;
endmodule
```

There are two ways to synthesize an electrical circuit with a reset signal based on the previous code. You can either synthesize the circuit with a simple flip-flop with external combinational logic to represent the reset functionality, as shown in [Figure 4-4](#), or you can synthesize a flip-flop with built-in reset functionality, as shown in [Figure 4-5](#).

Figure 4-4 Flip-Flop with External Combinational Logic to Represent Reset

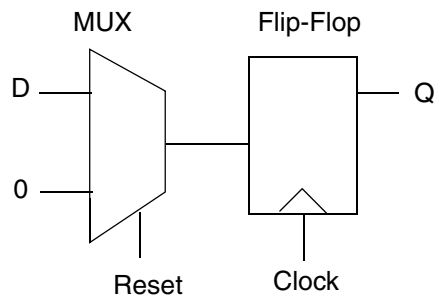
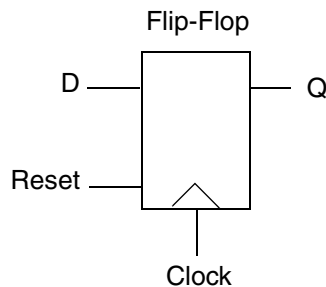


Figure 4-5 Flip-Flop With Built-In Reset Functionality



The intended implementation is not apparent from the RTL code. You should specify HDL Compiler synthesis directives or Design Compiler variables to guide the tool to create the proper synchronous set and reset signals.

The following sections provide examples of these flip-flop types:

- [Basic D Flip-Flop](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using ?: Construct](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use sync_set_reset](#)
- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load](#)
- [D Flip-Flops With Complex Set/Reset Signals](#)
- [Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls](#)

Basic D Flip-Flop

When you infer a D flip-flop, make sure you can control the clock and data signals from the top-level design ports or through combinational logic. Controllable clock and data signals ensure that simulation can initialize the design. If you cannot control the clock and data signals, infer a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset or set or with a synchronous reset or set.

[Example 4-24](#) infers a basic D flip-flop.

Example 4-24 Basic D Flip-Flop

```
module dff_pos (DATA, CLK, Q);
  input DATA, CLK;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(posedge CLK)
    Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-25](#).

Example 4-25 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using ?: Construct

[Example 4-26](#) uses the ?: construct to infer a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset. Note that the tool does not support more than one ?: operator inside an always block.

Example 4-26 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Using ?: Construct

```
module test(input clk, rst, din, output reg dout);
  always@(posedge clk or negedge rst)
    dout <= (!rst) ? 1'b0 : din;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-27](#).

Example 4-27 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
dout_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N

D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

[Example 4-28](#) infers a D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset.

Example 4-28 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset

```
module dff_async_reset (DATA, CLK, RESET, Q);
  input DATA, CLK, RESET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET)
    if (RESET)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else
      Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-29](#).

Example 4-29 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Reset Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N

D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset

[Example 4-30](#) infers a D flip-flop with asynchronous set and reset pins. The example uses the `one_hot` directive to prevent priority encoding of the set and reset signals. If both SET and RESET are asserted at the same time, the synthesized hardware will be unpredictable. To check for this condition, use the SYNTHESIS macro and the ``ifndef ... `endif` constructs as shown. See [“Predefined Macros” on page 1-19](#).

Example 4-30 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset

```
module dff_async (RESET, SET, DATA, Q, CLK);
  input CLK;
  input RESET, SET, DATA;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  // synopsys one_hot "RESET, SET"

  always @(posedge CLK or posedge RESET or posedge SET)
    if (RESET)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else if (SET)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else Q <= DATA;
    `ifndef SYNTHESIS
      always @ (RESET or SET)
        if (RESET + SET > 1)
          $write ("ONE-HOT violation for RESET and SET.");
    `endif
endmodule
```

[Example 4-31](#) shows the inference report.

Example 4-31 D Flip-Flop With Asynchronous Set and Reset Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N

D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use sync_set_reset

[Example 4-32](#) infers a D flip-flop with synchronous reset. The `sync_set_reset` directive is applied to the RESET signal.

Example 4-32 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset: Use sync_set_reset

```
module dff_sync_reset (DATA, CLK, RESET, Q);
  input DATA, CLK, RESET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  //synopsys sync_set_reset "RESET"
  always @(posedge CLK)
    if (~RESET)
      Q <= 1'b0;
    else
      Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-33](#).

Example 4-33 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Reset Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N

D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load

Use the coding style in [Example 4-34](#) to infer a D flip-flop with both synchronous and asynchronous load signals.

Example 4-34 Synchronous and Asynchronous Loads

```
module dff_a_s_load (ALOAD, SLOAD, ADATA, SDATA, CLK, Q);
  input ALOAD, ADATA, SLOAD, SDATA, CLK;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  wire asyn_rst, asyn_set;

  assign asyn_rst = ALOAD && !ADATA;
  assign asyn_set = ALOAD && ADATA;

  //synopsys one_cold "ALOAD, ADATA"

  always @ (posedge CLK or posedge asyn_rst or posedge asyn_set)
    begin
      if (asyn_set)
        Q <= 1'b1;
      else if (asyn_rst)
        Q <= 1'b0;
      else if (SLOAD)
        Q <= SDATA;
    end
```



```

        Q <= SDATA;
    end

```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example 4-35](#).

Example 4-35 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous and Asynchronous Load Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N

```

Sequential Cell (Q_reg)
  Cell Type: Flip-Flop
  Multibit Attribute: N
  Clock: CLK
  Async Clear: ADATA' ALOAD
  Async Set: ADATA ALOAD
  Async Load: 0
  Sync Clear: 0
  Sync Set: 0
  Sync Toggle: 0
  Sync Load: SLOAD

```

D Flip-Flops With Complex Set/Reset Signals

While many set/reset signals are simple signals, some include complex logic. To enable HDL Compiler to generate a clean set/reset (that is, a set/reset signal attached only to the appropriate set/reset pins), use the following coding guidelines:

- Apply the appropriate set/reset pragma (`//synopsys sync_set_reset` or `//synopsys async_set_reset`) to the set/reset signal.
- Use no more than two operands in the set/reset logic expression conditional.
- Use the set/reset signal as the first operand in the set/reset logic expression conditional.

This coding style supports usage of the negation operator on the set/reset signal and the logic expression. The logic expression can be a simple expression or any expression contained inside parentheses. However, any deviation from these coding guidelines will not be supported. For example, using a more complex expression other than the OR of two expressions, or using a `rst` (or `~rst`) that does not appear as the first argument in the expression is not supported.

Examples

```

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
always @(posedge clk)
  if (rst | logic_expression)
    q = 0;

  else ...

```

```
    else ...
...

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
assign a = rst | ~( a | b & c);
always @(posedge clk)
    if (a)
        q = 0;
    else ...;
    else ...;
...

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
always @(posedge clk)
    if ( ~ rst | ~ (a | b | c))
        q = 0;
    else ...
    else ...
...

//synopsys sync_set_reset "rst"
assign a = ~ rst | ~ logic_expression;
always @(posedge clk)
    if (a)
        q = 0;
    else ...;
    else ...;
...
```

Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls

In [Example 4-36](#), the `infer_sync` block uses the reset signal as a synchronous reset and the `infer_async` block uses the reset signal as an asynchronous reset.

Example 4-36 Multiple Flip-Flops With Asynchronous and Synchronous Controls

```
module multi_attr (DATA1, DATA2, CLK, RESET, SLOAD, Q1, Q2);
  input DATA1, DATA2, CLK, RESET, SLOAD;
  output Q1, Q2;
  reg Q1, Q2;

  //synopsys sync_set_reset "RESET"
  always @(posedge CLK)
  begin : infer_sync
    if (~RESET)
      Q1 <= 1'b0;
    else if (SLOAD)
      Q1 <= DATA1; // note: else hold Q1
    end
  always @(posedge CLK or negedge RESET)
  begin: infer_async
    if (~RESET)
      Q2 <= 1'b0;
    else if (SLOAD)
      Q2 <= DATA2;
    end
  end
endmodule
```

[Example 4-37](#) shows the inference report.

Example 4-37 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q1_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N
Q2_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N

5

Modeling Finite State Machines

HDL Compiler automatically infers finite state machines (FSMs). For FSM optimization details, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

This chapter describes FSM inference in the following sections:

- [FSM Coding Requirements for Automatic Inference](#)
- [FSM Inference Variables](#)
- [FSM Coding Example](#)
- [FSM Inference Report](#)
- [Enumerated Types](#)

FSM Coding Requirements for Automatic Inference

To enable HDL Compiler to automatically infer an FSM, follow the coding guidelines in [Table 5-1](#).

Table 5-1 Code Requirements for FSM Inference

Item	Description
Registers	<p>To infer a register as an FSM state register, the register</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Must never be assigned a value other than the defined state values. - Must always be inferred as a flip-flop (and not a latch). - Must never be a module port, function port, or task port. This would make the encoding visible to the outside. <p>Inside expressions, FSM state registers can be used only as an operand of "==" or "!=" comparisons, or as the expression in a case statement (that is, "case (cur_state) ...") that is, an implicit comparison to the label expressions. FSM state registers are not allowed to occur in other expressions—this would make the encoding explicit.</p>
Function	<p>There can be only one FSM design per module. State variables cannot drive a port. State variables cannot be indexed.</p>
Ports	<p>All ports of the initial design must be either input ports or output ports. Inout ports are not supported.</p>
Combinational feedback loops	<p>Combinational feedback loops are not supported although combinational logic that does not depend on the state vector is accurately represented.</p>
Clocks	<p>FSM designs can include only a single clock and an optional synchronous or asynchronous reset signal.</p>

FSM Inference Variables

Finite state machine inference variables are listed in [Table 5-2](#).

Table 5-2 Variables Specific to FSM Inference

Variable	Description
<code>hdlin_reporting_level</code>	Default is <code>basic</code> . Variable enables and disables FSM inference reports. When set to <code>comprehensive</code> , FSM inference reports are generated when HDL Compiler reads the code. By default, FSM inference reports are not generated. For more information, including valid values, see “Elaboration Reports” on page 1-6 .
<code>fsm_auto_inferring</code>	Default is <code>false</code> . Variable determines whether or not Design Compiler automatically extracts the FSM during compile. This option controls Design Compiler extraction. In order to automatically infer and extract an FSM, <code>fsm_auto_inferring</code> must be <code>true</code> . See the <i>Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis</i> for additional information.

For more information about these variables, see the man pages.

FSM Coding Example

HDL Compiler infers an FSM for the design in [Example 5-1](#). [Figure 5-1](#) shows the state diagram for fsm1.

Example 5-1 Finite State Machine fsm1

```
module fsm1 (x, clk, rst, y);
  input x, clk, rst;
  output y;

  parameter [3:0]
    set0 = 4'b0001, hold0 = 4'b0010, set1 = 4'b0100, hold1 = 4'b1000;

  reg [3:0] current_state, next_state;

  always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
    if (rst)
      current_state = set0;
    else
      current_state = next_state;

  always @ (current_state or x)
    case (current_state)
      set0:
        next_state = hold0;
      hold0:
        if (x == 0)
          next_state = hold0;
        else
          next_state = set1;
      set1:
        next_state = hold1;
      hold1:
        next_state = set0;
      default :
        next_state = set0;
    endcase
  assign y = current_state == hold0 & x;
endmodule
```

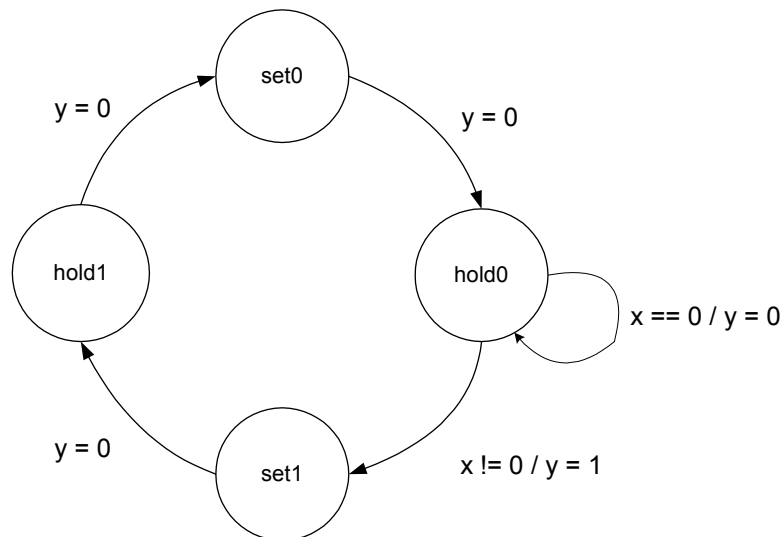

Figure 5-1 State Diagram for fsm1

Table 5-3 shows the state table for fsm1.

Table 5-3 State Table for fsm1

Current state	Input (x)	Next state	Output (Y)
0001 (set0)	0	0010 (hold0)	0
0001 (set0)	1	0010 (hold0)	0
0010 (hold0)	0	0010 (hold0)	0
0010 (hold0)	1	0100 (set1)	1
0100 (set1)	0	1000 (hold1)	0
0100 (set1)	1	1000 (hold1)	0
1000 (hold1)	0	0001 (set0)	0
1000 (hold1)	1	0001 (set0)	0

FSM Inference Report

HDL Compiler creates a finite state machine inference report when you set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `comprehensive`. The default is `basic`, meaning that an FSM inference report is not generated. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Elaboration Reports” on page 1-6](#).

Consider the code in [Example 5-2](#).

Example 5-2 FSM Code

```
module fsm (clk, rst, y);
    input clk, rst;
    output y;
    parameter [2:0]
    red = 3'b001, green = 3'b010, yellow = 3'b100;
    reg [2:0] current_state, next_state;

    always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
        if (rst)
            current_state = red;
        else
            current_state = next_state;

    always @(*)
        case (current_state)
            yellow:
                next_state = red;
            green:
                next_state = yellow;
            red:
                next_state = green;
            default:
                next_state = red;
        endcase
    assign y = current_state == yellow;
endmodule // fsm
```

[Example 5-3](#) shows the FSM inference report.

Example 5-3 FSM Inference Report

```
statistics for FSM inference:
state register: current_state
states
=====
fsm_state_0:100
fsm_state_1:010
fsm_state_2:001
total number of states: 3
```

Enumerated Types

HDL Compiler simplifies equality comparisons and detection of full cases in designs that contain enumerated types. A variable has an enumerated type when it can take on only a subset of the values it could possibly represent. For example, if a 2-bit variable can be set to 0, 1, or 2 but is never assigned to 3, then it has the enumerated type {0, 1, 2}. Enumerated types commonly occur in finite state machine state encodings. When the number of states needed is not a power of 2, certain state values can never occur. In finite state machines with one-hot encodings, many values can never be assigned to the state vector. For example, for a vector of length n , there are n one-hot values, so there are $(2^n - n)$ values that will never be used.

HDL Compiler infers enumerated types automatically; user directives can be used in other situations. When all variable assignments are within a module, HDL Compiler usually detects if the variable has an enumerated type. If the variable is assigned a value that depends on an input port or if the design assigns individual bits of the variable separately, HDL Compiler requires the `/* synopsys enum */` directive in order to consider the variable as having an enumerated type.

When enumerated types are inferred, HDL Compiler generates a report similar to [Example 5-4](#).

Example 5-4 Enumerated Type Report

Symbol Name	Source	Type	# of values
current_state	auto	onehot	4

This report tells you the source of the enumerated type,

- user directive (user will be listed under Source)
- HDL Compiler inferred (auto will be listed under Source)

It also tells you the type of encoding—whether onehot or enumerated (enum). HDL Compiler recognizes a special case of enumerated types in which each possible value has a single bit set to 1 and all remaining bits set to zero. This special case allows additional optimization opportunities. An enumerated type that fits this pattern is described as onehot in the enumerated type report. All other enumerated types are described as enum in the report.

To enable HDL Compiler to perform simplification of equality comparisons, set `hdl_in_optimize_enum_types` to true (default is false). This implementation typically leads to a smaller and faster design.

Example 5-5 is a combination of both FSM and enumerated type optimization. The first case statement infers an FSM; the second case statement uses enumerated type optimization. These are two independent processes.

Example 5-5 Design: my_design

```
module my_design (clk, rst, x, y);
    input clk, rst;
    input [5:0] x;
    output [5:0] y;

    parameter [5:0]
        zero = 6'b000001, one = 6'b000010, two = 6'b000100, three = 6'b001000, four
        = 6'b010000, five = 6'b100000;

    reg [5:0] tmp;
    reg [5:0] y;

    always @ (posedge clk or posedge rst)
        if (rst)
            tmp = zero;
        else
            case (x)
                one      : tmp = zero;
                two       : tmp = one;
                three     : tmp = two;
                four      : tmp = three;
                five      : tmp = four;
                default   : tmp = five;
            endcase

    always @ (tmp)
        case (tmp)
            five      : y = 6'b100110;
            four      : y = 6'b010100;
            three     : y = 6'b001001;
            two       : y = 6'b010010;
            one       : y = 6'b111111;
            zero      : y = 6'b100100;
            default   : y = 6'b110101;
        endcase
endmodule
```

6

Modeling Three-State Buffers

HDL Compiler infers a three-state driver when you assign the value z (high impedance) to a variable. HDL Compiler infers 1 three-state driver per variable per always block. You can assign high-impedance values to single-bit or bused variables. A three-state driver is represented as a TSGEN cell in the generic netlist. Three-state driver inference and instantiation are described in the following sections:

- [Using z Values](#)
- [Three-State Driver Inference Report](#)
- [Assigning a Single Three-State Driver to a Single Variable](#)
- [Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable](#)
- [Registering Three-State Driver Data](#)
- [Instantiating Three-State Drivers](#)
- [Errors and Warnings](#)

Using z Values

You can use the z value in the following ways:

- Variable assignment
- Function call argument
- Return value

You can use the z value only in a comparison expression, such as in

```
if (IN_VAL == 1'bz) y=0;
```

This statement is permissible because `IN_VAL == 1'bz` is a comparison. However, it always evaluates to false, so it is also a simulation/synthesis mismatch. See [“Comparisons to x or z Values” on page 2-26](#).

This code,

```
OUT_VAL = (1'bz && IN_VAL);
```

is not a comparison expression. HDL Compiler generates an error for this expression.

Three-State Driver Inference Report

The `hdlin_reporting_level` variable determines whether HDL Compiler generates a three-state inference report. If you do not want inference reports, set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `none`. The default is `basic`, meaning that a report will be generated. [Example 6-1](#) shows a three-state inference report:

Example 6-1 Three-State Inference Report

```
=====
| Register Name |           Type           | Width | MB |
=====
|   T_tri       | Tri-State Buffer         |    1   |  N  |
=====
```

The first column of the report indicates the name of the inferred device. The second column indicates device type. The third column indicates if the inferred device is a multibit device. The verbose report (set `hdlin_reporting_level` to `verbose`) is the same as the default (`basic`) report. For more information about the `hdlin_reporting_level` variable, see [“Elaboration Reports” on page 1-6](#).

Assigning a Single Three-State Driver to a Single Variable

[Example 6-2](#) infers a single three-state driver and shows the associated inference report.

Example 6-2 Single Three-State Driver

```
module three_state (ENABLE, IN1, OUT1);
  input IN1, ENABLE;
  output OUT1;
  reg OUT1;
  always @(ENABLE or IN1) begin
    if (ENABLE)
      OUT1 = IN1;
    else
      OUT1 = 1'bz; //assigns high-impedance state
    end
  end
endmodule
```

Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	MB
OUT1_tri	Tri-State Buffer	1	N

[Example 6-3](#) infers a single three-state driver with MUXed inputs and shows the associated inference report.

Example 6-3 Single Three-State Driver With MUXed Inputs

```
module three_state (A, B, SELA, SELB, T);
  input A, B, SELA, SELB;
  output T;
  reg T;
  always @(SELA or SELB or A or B) begin
    T = 1'bz;
    if (SELA)
      T = A;
    if (SELB)
      T = B;
    end
  end
endmodule
```

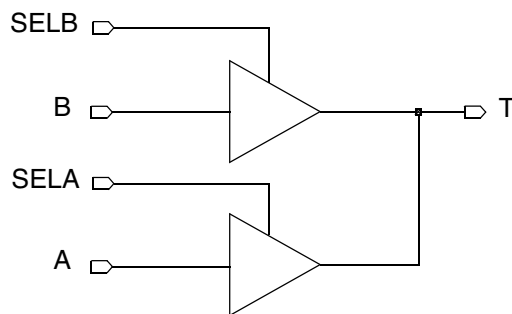
Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	MB
T_tri	Tri-State Buffer	1	N

Assigning Multiple Three-State Drivers to a Single Variable

When assigning multiple three-state drivers to a single variable, as shown in [Figure 6-1](#), always use assign statements, as shown in [Example 6-4](#).

Figure 6-1 Two Three-State Drivers Assigned to a Single Variable



Example 6-4 Correct Method

```
module three_state (A, B, SELA, SELB, T);
  input A, B, SELA, SELB;
  output T;
  assign T = (SELA) ? A : 1'bz;
  assign T = (SELB) ? B : 1'bz;
endmodule
```

Do not use multiple always blocks (shown in [Example 6-5](#)). Multiple always blocks cause a simulation/synthesis mismatch because the reg data type is not resolved. Note that the tool does not display a warning for this mismatch.

Example 6-5 Incorrect Method

```
module three_state (A, B, SELA, SELB, T);
  input A, B, SELA, SELB;
  output T;
  reg T;
  always @(SELA or A)
    if (SELA)
      T = A;
    else
      T = 1'bz;
  always @(SELB or B)
    if (SELB)
      T = B;
    else
      T = 1'bz;
endmodule
```


Registering Three-State Driver Data

When a variable is registered in the same block in which it is defined as a three-state driver, HDL Compiler also registers the driver's enable signal, as shown in [Example 6-6](#). [Figure 6-2](#) shows the compiled gates and the associated inference report.

Example 6-6 Three-State Driver With Enable and Data Registered

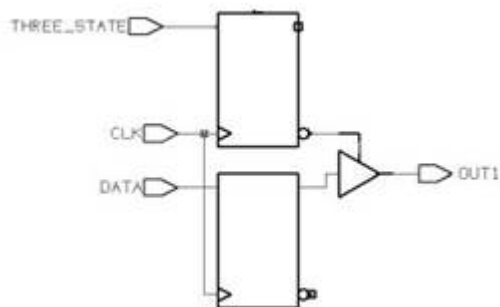
```
module ff_3state (DATA, CLK, THREE_STATE, OUT1);
  input DATA, CLK, THREE_STATE;
  output OUT1;
  reg OUT1;
  always @ (posedge CLK) begin
    if (THREE_STATE)
      OUT1 = 1'bz;
    else
      OUT1 = DATA;
  end
endmodule
```

Inference reports:

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
OUT1_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
OUT1_tri_enable_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Register Name	Type	Width	MB
OUT1_tri	Tri-State Buffer	1	N

Figure 6-2 Three-State Driver With Enable and Data Registered



Instantiating Three-State Drivers

The following gate types are supported:

- buif0 (active-low enable line)
- buif1 (active-high enable line)
- notif0 (active-low enable line, output inverted)
- notif1 (active-high enable line, output inverted)

Connection lists for buif and notif gates use positional notation. Specify the order of the terminals as follows:

- The first terminal connects to the output of the gate.
- The second terminal connects to the input of the gate.
- The third terminal connects to the control line.

[Example 6-7](#) shows a three-state gate instantiation with an active-high enable and no inverted output.

Example 6-7 Three-State Gate Instantiation

```
module three_state (in1,out1,cntrl1);
    input in1,cntrl1;
    output out1;

    buif1 (out1,in1,cntrl1);
endmodule
```

Errors and Warnings

When you use the coding styles recommended in this chapter, you do not need to declare variables that drive multiply driven nets as tri data objects. But if you don't use these coding styles, or you don't declare the variable as a tri data object, HDL Compiler issues an ELAB-366 error message and terminates. To force HDL Compiler to warn for this condition (ELAB-365) but continue to create a netlist, set

`hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple_drivers` to false (the default is true). With this variable false, HDL Compiler builds the generic netlist for all legal designs. If a design is illegal, such as when one of the drivers is a constant, HDL Compiler issues an error.

The following code generates an ELAB-366 error message (OUT1 is a reg being driven by two always@ blocks):

```
module three_state (ENABLE, IN1, RESET, OUT1);

input IN1, ENABLE, RESET;
output OUT1;
reg OUT1;

always @(IN1 or ENABLE)
    if (ENABLE)
        OUT1 = IN1;

always@ (RESET)
    if (RESET)
        OUT1 = 1'b0;
endmodule
```

The ELAB-366 error message is

```
Error: Net '/...v:14: OUT1' or a directly connected net is
driven by more than one source, and not all drivers are
three-state. (ELAB-366)
```


7

HDL Compiler Synthesis Directives

HDL Compiler synthesis directives are special comments that affect the actions of HDL Compiler and Design Compiler. These comments are ignored by other tools. HDL Compiler synthesis directives begin with `//synopsys` or `/*synopsys`. The `//$s` or `//$S` notation can be used as a shortcut for `//synopsys`. The simulator ignores these directives. The syntax descriptions in this chapter primarily show the `//synopsys` notation.

Note:

HDL Compiler reports a syntax error if you use `//synopsys` in a regular comment.

The following sections describe the HDL Compiler synthesis directives:

- [async_set_reset](#)
- [async_set_reset_local](#)
- [async_set_reset_local_all](#)
- [dc_tcl_script_begin](#) and [dc_tcl_script_end](#)
- [enum](#)
- [full_case](#)
- [infer_multibit](#) and [dont_infer_multibit](#)
- [infer_mux](#)
- [infer_onehot_mux](#)

- `keep_signal_name`
- `one_cold`
- `one_hot`
- `parallel_case`
- `preserve_sequential`
- `sync_set_reset`
- `sync_set_reset_local`
- `sync_set_reset_local_all`
- `template`
- `translate_off` and `translate_on` (Deprecated)

async_set_reset

When you set the `async_set_reset` directive on a single-bit signal, HDL Compiler searches for a branch that uses the signal as a condition and then checks whether the branch contains an assignment to a constant value. If the branch does, the signal becomes an asynchronous reset or set. Use this directive on single-bit signals.

The syntax is

```
// synopsys async_set_reset "signal_name_list"
```

See [Example A-20 on page A-30](#), [Example A-22 on page A-31](#), and [Example 4-20 on page 4-14](#).

async_set_reset_local

When you set the `async_set_reset_local` directive, HDL Compiler treats listed signals in the specified block as if they have the `async_set_reset` directive set.

Attach the `async_set_reset_local` directive to a block label using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys async_set_reset_local block_label "signal_name_list"
```

async_set_reset_local_all

When you set the `async_set_reset_local_all` directive, HDL Compiler treats all listed signals in the specified blocks as if they have the `async_set_reset` directive set. Attach the `async_set_reset_local_all` directive to a block label using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys async_set_reset_local_all "block_label_list"
```

To enable the `async_set_reset_local_all` behavior, you must set `hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset` to false and use the coding style shown in [Example 7-1](#).

Example 7-1

```
// To enable the async_set_reset_local_all behavior, you must set
// hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset to false in addition to coding per the
// below template.
```

```
module m1 (input rst,set,d,d1,clk,clk1, output reg q,q1);
```

```
// synopsys async_set_reset_local_all "sync_rst"
always @(posedge clk or posedge rst or posedge set) begin :sync_rst
```

```

        if (rst)
            q <= 1'b0;
        else if (set)
            q <= 1'b1;
        else q <= d;
    end

    always @(posedge clk1 or posedge rst or posedge set) begin :
default_rst
    if (rst)
        q1 <= 1'b0;
    else if (set)
        q1 <= 1'b1;
    else
        q1 <= d1;
    end

endmodule

```

dc_tcl_script_begin and dc_tcl_script_end

You can embed Tcl commands that set design constraints and attributes within the RTL by using the `dc_tcl_script_begin` and `dc_tcl_script_end` directives, as shown in [Example 7-2](#) and [Example 7-3](#).

Example 7-2 Embedding Constraints With // Delimiters

```

...
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
// set_max_area 0.0
// set_max_delay 0.0 port_z
// synopsys dc_tcl_script_end
...

```

Example 7-3 Embedding Constraints With /* and */ Delimiters

```

/* synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
   set_max_area 10.0
   set_max_delay 5.0 port_z
*/

```

Design Compiler interprets the statements embedded between the `dc_tcl_script_begin` and the `dc_tcl_script_end` directives. If you want to comment out part of your script, use the `#` comment character.

The following items are not supported in embedded Tcl scripts:

- Hierarchical constraints
- Wildcards

- List commands
- Multiple line commands

Observe the following guidelines when using embedded Tcl scripts:

- Constraints and attributes declared outside a module apply to all subsequent modules declared in the file.
- Constraints and attributes declared inside a module apply only to the enclosing module.
- Any `dc_shell` scripts embedded in functions apply to the whole module.
- Include only commands that set constraints and attributes. Do not use action commands such as `compile`, `gen`, and `report`. The tool ignores these commands and issues a warning or error message.
- The constraints or attributes set in the embedded script go into effect after the `read` command is executed. Therefore, variables that affect the read process itself are not in effect before the read. For example, if you set the `hdlin_no_latches` variable to true in the embedded script, this variable does not influence latch inference in the current read.
- Error checking is done after the `read` command finishes. Syntactic and semantic errors in `dc_shell` strings are reported at this time.
- You can have more than one `dc_tcl_script_begin` / `dc_tcl_script_end` pair per file or module. The compiler does not issue an error or warning when it sees more than one pair. Each pair is evaluated and set on the applicable code.
- An embedded `dc_shell` script does not produce any information or status messages unless there is an error in the script.
- If you use embedded Tcl scripts while running in `dcsh` mode, Design Compiler issues the following error message:

```
Error: Design 'MID' has embedded Tcl commands which are
ignored in EQN mode. (UIO-162)
```
- Usage of built-in Tcl commands is not recommended.
- Usage of output redirection commands is not recommended.

enum

Use the `enum` directive with the Verilog parameter definition statement to specify state machine encodings.

The syntax of the `enum` directive is

```
// synopsys enum enum_name
```

[Example 7-4](#) shows the declaration of an enumeration of type colors that is 3 bits wide and has the enumeration literals red, green, blue, and cyan with the values shown.

Example 7-4 Enumeration of Type Colors

```
parameter [2:0] // synopsys enum colors
red = 3'b000, green = 3'b001, blue = 3'b010, cyan = 3'b011;
```

The enumeration must include a size (bit-width) specification. [Example 7-5](#) shows an invalid `enum` declaration.

Example 7-5 Invalid enum Declaration

```
parameter /* synopsys enum colors */
red = 3'b000, green = 1;
// [2:0] required
```

[Example 7-6](#) shows a register, a wire, and an input port with the declared type of colors. In each of the following declarations, the array bounds must match those of the enumeration declaration. If you use different bounds, synthesis might not agree with simulation behavior.

Example 7-6 enum Type Declarations

```
reg [2:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ counter;
wire [2:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ peri_bus;
input [2:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ input_port;
```

Even though you declare a variable to be of type `enum`, it can still be assigned a bit value that is not one of the enumeration values in the definition. [Example 7-7](#) relates to [Example 7-6](#) and shows an invalid encoding for colors.

Example 7-7 Invalid Bit Value Encoding for Colors

```
counter = 3'b111;
```

Because 111 is not in the definition for colors, it is not a valid encoding. HDL Compiler accepts this encoding, but issues a warning for this assignment.

You can use enumeration literals just like constants, as shown in [Example 7-8](#).

Example 7-8 Enumeration Literals Used as Constants

```
if (input_port == blue)
    counter = red;
```

If you declare a port as a reg and as an enumerated type, you must declare the enumeration when you declare the port. [Example 7-9](#) shows the declaration of the enumeration.

Example 7-9 Enumerated Type Declaration for a Port

```
module good_example (a,b);

    parameter [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */
        green = 2'b00, white = 2'b11;
    input a;
    output [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ b;
    reg [1:0] b;

    .
    .
endmodule
```

[Example 7-10](#) declares a port as an enumerated type incorrectly because the enumerated type declaration appears with the reg declaration instead of with the output declaration.

Example 7-10 Incorrect Enumerated Type Declaration for a Port

```
module bad_example (a,b);

    parameter [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */
        green = 2'b00, white = 2'b11;
    input a;
    output [1:0] b;
    reg [1:0] /* synopsys enum colors */ b;

    .
    .
endmodule
```

full_case

This directive prevents HDL Compiler from generating logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creating an implicit default branch. Set the `full_case` directive on a case statement when you know that all possible branches of the case statement are listed within the case statement. When a variable is assigned in a case statement that is not full, the variable is conditionally assigned and requires a latch.

Caution:

Marking a case statement as full when it actually is not full can cause the simulation to behave differently from the logic HDL Compiler synthesizes because HDL Compiler does not generate a latch to handle the implicit default condition.

The syntax for the `full_case` directive is

```
// synopsys full_case
```

In [Example 7-11](#), `full_case` is set on the first case statement and `parallel_case` and `full_case` directives are set on the second case statement.

Example 7-11 *//synopsys full_case Directives*

```
module test (in, out, current_state, next_state);
    input [1:0] in;
    output reg [1:0] out;
    input [3:0] current_state;
    output reg [3:0] next_state;

    parameter state1 = 4'b0001, state2 = 4'b0010, state3 = 4'b0100, state4 =
        4'b1000;

    always @* begin
        case (in) // synopsys full_case
            0: out = 2;
            1: out = 3;
            2: out = 0;
        endcase
        case (1) // synopsys parallel_case full_case
            current_state[0] : next_state = state2;
            current_state[1] : next_state = state3;
            current_state[2] : next_state = state4;
            current_state[3] : next_state = state1;
        endcase
    end
endmodule
```

In the first case statement, the condition `in == 3` is not covered. However, the designer knows that `in == 3` will never occur and therefore sets the `full_case` directive on the case statement.

In the second case statement, not all 16 possible branch conditions are covered; for example, `current_state == 4'b0101` is not covered. However,

- The designer knows that these states will never occur and therefore sets the `full_case` directive on the case statement.
- The designer also knows that only one branch is true at a time and therefore sets the `parallel_case` directive on the case statement.

In the following example, at least one branch will be taken because all possible values of `sel` are covered, that is, 00, 01, 10, and 11:

```
module mux(a, b,c,d,sel,y);
  input a,b,c,d;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output y;
  reg y;
  always @ (a or b or c or d or sel)
  begin
    case (sel)
      2'b00 : y=a;
      2'b01 : y=b;
      2'b10 : y=c;
      2'b11 : y=d;
    endcase
  end
endmodule
```

In the following example, the case statement is not full:

```
module mux(a, b,c,d,sel,y);
  input a,b,c,d;
  input [1:0] sel;
  output y;
  reg y;
  always @ (a or b or c or d or sel)
  begin
    case (sel)
      2'b00 : y=a;
      2'b11 : y=d;
    endcase
  end
endmodule
```

It is unknown what happens when sel equals 01 and 10. In this case, HDL Compiler generates logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creates an implicit “default” branch that contains no actions. When a variable is assigned in a case statement that is not full, the variable is conditionally assigned and requires a latch.

infer_multibit and dont_infer_multibit

The following sections describe how to use the multibit inference directives to infer multibit components from the RTL:

- [Using the infer_multibit Directive](#)
- [Using the dont_infer_multibit Directive](#)
- [Multibit Benefits](#)
- [Reporting Multibit Components](#)

- [Limitations of Multibit Inference](#)

To create multibit components after layout, use the Design Compiler `create_multibit` command. See the Design Compiler documentation for usage.

Note:

The term *multibit component* refers, for example, to a 16-bit register in your HDL description. The term *multibit library cell* refers to a library macrocell, such as a flip-flop cell.

Using the `infer_multibit` Directive

To direct HDL Compiler to infer specific cells as multibit components, set the `infer_multibit` directive on specific components in the Verilog code. This directive gives you control over individual wire and register signals. [Example 7-12](#) shows usage.

Example 7-12

```
module mux4to1_6 (select, a, b, c, d, z);
  input [1:0] select;
  input [5:0] a, b, c, d;
  output [5:0] z;
  reg [5:0] z;
  //synopsys infer_multibit "z"

  always@(select or a or b or c or d)
  begin
    case (select)
      2'b00: z <= a;
      2'b01: z <= b;
      2'b10: z <= c;
      2'b11: z <= d;
    endcase
  end
endmodule
```

[Example 7-13](#) shows the multibit inference report.

Example 7-13

```
Statistics for MUX_OPs
=====
| block name/line | Inputs | Outputs | # sel inputs | MB |
=====
| mux4to1_6/10   | 4      | 6        | 2             | Y  |
=====
```

[Example 7-13](#) indicates which cells are inferred as multibit components. The column MB indicates if the component is inferred as a multibit component.

Using the dont_infer_multibit Directive

If you set `hdl_infer_multibit` to `default_all`, which infers as multibit all bused registers, three-states, and MUX_OPs, but you do not want specific components as multibit, you can prevent specific multibit inference by using the `dont_infer_multibit` directive, as shown in [Example 7-14](#).

Example 7-14

```
module mux4to1_6 (select, a, b, c, d, z);
  input [1:0] select;
  input [5:0] a, b, c, d;
  output [5:0] z;
  reg [5:0] z;
  //synopsys dont_infer_multibit "z"

  always@(select or a or b or c or d)
  begin
    case (select)
      2'b00: z <= a;
      2'b01: z <= b;
      2'b10: z <= c;
      2'b11: z <= d;
    endcase
  end
endmodule
```

Multibit Benefits

Multibit inference allows you to map registers, multiplexers, and three-state cells to regularly structured logic or multibit library cells. Multibit library cells (the macrocells, such as a 16-bit banked flip-flop, in the library) have these advantages:

- Smaller area and delay, due to shared transistors (as in select or set/reset logic) and optimized transistor-level layout
- Reduced clock skew in sequential gates, because the clock paths are balanced internally in the hard macro implementing the multibit component
- Lower power consumption by the clock in sequential banked components, due to reduced capacitance driven by the clock net
- Better performance, due to the optimized layout within the multibit component
- Improved regular layout of the datapath

Reporting Multibit Components

The `report_multibit` command reports all multibit components in the current design. The report, viewable before and after compile, shows the multibit group name and what cells implement each bit.

[Example 7-15](#) shows a multibit component report.

Example 7-15

```
*****
Report : multibit
Design : mux4to1_6
Version: B-2008.09
Date   : Wed Jul 30 08:57:37 2008
*****

Attributes:
  b - black box (unknown)
  h - hierarchical
  n - noncombinational
  r - removable
  s - synthetic operator
  u - contains unmapped logic

Multibit Component : C13_multibit
Cell                Reference      Library      Area      Width
Attributes
-----
C13                 *MUX_OP_4_2_6          0.00      6      s, u
-----

Total 1 cells                0.00      6

Total 1 Multibit Components
1
```

For registers and three-state cells, the multibit group name is set to the name of the bus. In the cell names of the multibit registers with consecutive bits, a colon separates the outlying bits.

If the colon conflicts with the naming requirements of your place and route tool, you can change the colon to another delimiter by using the `bus_range_separator_style` variable.

For multibit library cells with nonconsecutive bits, a comma separates the nonconsecutive bits. This delimiter is controlled by the `bus_multiple_separator_style` variable. For example, a 4-bit banked register that implements bits 0, 1, 2, and 5 of bus `data_reg` is named `data_reg [0:2,5]`.

For multiplexer cells, the name is set to the cell name of the `MUX_OP` before optimization.

Limitations of Multibit Inference

Multibit components may not be efficient in the following instances:

- As state machine registers
- In small bused logic that would benefit from single-bit design

Multibit inference of combinational multibit cells occurs only during sequential mapping of multibit registers. Multibit sequential mapping does not pull in as many levels of logic as single-bit sequential mapping. Thus, Design Compiler might not infer a complex multibit sequential cell, such as a JK flip-flop, which could adversely affect the quality of the design.

You can infer as multibit components only register, multiplexer, and three-state cells that have identical structures for each bit. For more information about how Design Compiler handles multibit components, see the *Design Compiler Reference Manual: Optimization and Timing Analysis*.

infer_mux

The `infer_mux` directive enables you to infer `MUX_OP` cells for a specific case or if statement, as shown:

```
always@(SEL) begin
  case (SEL) // synopsys infer_mux
    2'b00: DOUT <= DIN[0];
    2'b01: DOUT <= DIN[1];
    2'b10: DOUT <= DIN[2];
    2'b11: DOUT <= DIN[3];
  endcase
```

You must use a simple variable as the control expression; for example, you can use the input "A" but not the negation of input "A". If statements have special coding considerations. For more information, see [“MUX_OP Inference” on page 3-15](#) and [“Considerations When Using If Statements to Code For MUX_OPs” on page 3-22](#).

infer_onehot_mux

The `infer_onehot_mux` directive enables you to map combinational logic to one-hot multiplexers in the technology library. For details, see [“One-Hot Multiplexer Inference” on page 3-14](#).

keep_signal_name

Use the `keep_signal_name` directive to provide HDL Compiler with guidelines for preserving signal names.

The syntax is

```
// synopsys keep_signal_name "signal_name_list"
```

Set the `keep_signal_name` directive on a signal before any reference is made to that signal; for example, one methodology is to put the directive immediately after the declaration of the signal.

For examples, see [“Keeping Signal Names” on page 2-20](#).

one_cold

A one-cold implementation indicates that all signals in a group are active-low and that only one signal can be active at a given time. Synthesis implements the `one_cold` directive by omitting a priority circuit in front of the flip-flop. Simulation ignores the directive. The `one_cold` directive prevents Design Compiler from implementing priority-encoding logic for the set and reset signals. Attach this directive to set or reset signals on sequential devices, using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys one_cold signal_name_list
```

See [Example 4-22 on page 4-15](#).

one_hot

A one-hot implementation indicates that all signals in a group are active-high and that only one signal can be active at a given time. Synthesis implements the `one_hot` directive by omitting a priority circuit in front of a flip-flop. Simulation ignores the directive. The `one_hot`

directive prevents Design Compiler from implementing priority-encoding logic for the set and reset signals. Attach this directive to set or reset signals on sequential devices, using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys one_hot signal_name_list
```

See [Example 4-30 on page 4-19](#) and [Example A-32 on page A-36](#).

parallel_case

Set the `parallel_case` directive on a case statement when you know that only one branch of the case statement will be true at a time. This directive prevents HDL Compiler from building additional logic to ensure the first occurrence of a true branch is executed if more than one branch were true at one time.

Caution:

Marking a case statement as parallel when it actually is not parallel can cause the simulation to behave differently from the logic HDL Compiler synthesizes because HDL Compiler does not generate priority encoding logic to make sure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.

The syntax for the `parallel_case` directive is

```
// synopsys parallel_case
```

Use the `parallel_case` directive immediately after the case expression. In [Example 7-16](#), the states of a state machine are encoded as a one-hot signal; the designer knows that only one branch is true at a time and therefore sets the `synopsys parallel_case` directive on the case statement.

Example 7-16 *parallel_case Directives*

```
reg [3:0] current_state, next_state;
parameter state1 = 4'b0001, state2 = 4'b0010,
          state3 = 4'b0100, state4 = 4'b1000;
case (1)//synopsys parallel_case
    current_state[0] : next_state = state2;
    current_state[1] : next_state = state3;
    current_state[2] : next_state = state4;
    current_state[3] : next_state = state1;
endcase
```

When a case statement is not parallel (more than one branch evaluates to true), priority encoding is needed to ensure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.

[Table](#) summarizes the types of case statements.

Case statement description	Additional logic
Full and parallel	No additional logic is generated.
Full but not parallel	Priority-encoded logic: HDL Compiler generates logic to ensure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect.
Parallel but not full	Latches created: HDL Compiler generates logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creates an implicit “default” branch that requires a latch.
Not parallel and not full	Priority-encoded logic: HDL Compiler generates logic to make sure that the branch listed first in the case statement takes effect. Latches created: HDL Compiler generates logic to test for any value that is not covered by the case branches and creates an implicit “default” branch that requires a latch.

preserve_sequential

The `preserve_sequential` directive allows you to preserve specific cells that would otherwise be optimized away by HDL Compiler. See [“Keeping Unloaded Registers” on page 4-8](#).

sync_set_reset

Use the `sync_set_reset` directive to infer a D flip-flop with a synchronous set/reset. When you compile your design, the SEQGEN inferred by HDL Compiler will be mapped to a flip-flop in the technology library with a synchronous set/reset pin, or Design Compiler will use a regular D flip-flop and build synchronous set/reset logic in front of the D pin. The choice depends on which method provides a better optimization result.

It is important to use the `sync_set_reset` directive to label the set/reset signal because it tells Design Compiler that the signal should be kept as close to the register as possible during mapping, preventing a simulation/synthesis mismatch which can occur if the set/reset signal is masked by an X during initialization in simulation.

When a single-bit signal has this directive set to true, HDL Compiler checks the signal to determine whether it synchronously sets or resets a register in the design. Attach this directive to single-bit signals. Use the following syntax:

```
//synopsys sync_set_reset "signal_name_list"
```

For an example of a D flip-flop with a synchronous set signal that uses the `sync_set_reset` directive, see [Example A-30 on page A-35](#). For an example of a JK flip-flop with synchronous set and reset signals that uses the `sync_set_reset` directive, see [Example A-32 on page A-36](#).

For an example of a D flip-flop with a synchronous reset signal that uses the `sync_set_reset` directive, see [Example 4-32 on page 4-20](#). For an example of multiple flip-flops with asynchronous and synchronous controls, see [Example 4-36 on page 4-23](#).

sync_set_reset_local

The `sync_set_reset_local` directive instructs HDL Compiler to treat signals listed in a specified block as if they have the `sync_set_reset` directive set to true.

Attach this directive to a block label, using the following syntax:

```
//synopsys sync_set_reset_local block_label "signal_name_list"
```

[Example 7-17](#) shows the usage.

Example 7-17

```
module m1 (input d1,d2,clk, set1, set2, rst1, rst2, output reg q1,q2);

// synopsys sync_set_reset_local sync_rst "rst1"
//always@(posedge clk or negedge rst1)
always@(posedge clk )
begin: sync_rst
    if(~rst1)
        q1 = 1'b0;
    else if (set1)
        q1 = 1'b1;
    else
        q1 = d1;
end

always@(posedge clk)
begin: default_rst
    if(~rst2)
        q2 = 1'b0;
    else if (set2)
        q2 = 1'b1;
    else
```

```

        q2 = d2;
    end

endmodule

```

sync_set_reset_local_all

The `sync_set_reset_local_all` directive instructs HDL Compiler to treat all signals listed in the specified blocks as if they have the `sync_set_reset` directive set to true.

Attach this directive to a block label, using the following syntax:

```
// synopsys sync_set_reset_local_all "block_label_list"
```

[Example 7-18](#) shows usage.

Example 7-18

```

module m2 (input d1,d2,clk, set1, set2, rst1, rst2, output reg q1,q2);

    // synopsys sync_set_reset_local_all sync_rst
    //always@(posedge clk or negedge rst1)
    always@(posedge clk )
        begin: sync_rst
            if(~rst1)
                q1 = 1'b0;
            else if (set1)
                q1 = 1'b1;
            else
                q1 = d1;
        end

    always@(posedge clk)
        begin: default_rst
            if(~rst2)
                q2 = 1'b0;
            else if (set2)
                q2 = 1'b1;
            else
                q2 = d2;
        end

endmodule

```

template

The `template` directive saves an analyzed file and does not elaborate it. Without this directive, the analyzed file is saved and elaborated. If you use this directive and your design contains parameters, the design is saved as a template. [Example 7-19](#) shows usage.

Example 7-19 template Directive

```
module template (a, b, c);  
    input a, b, c;  
    // synopsys template  
    parameter width = 8;  
    .  
    .  
    .  
endmodule
```

For more information, see [“Parameterized Designs” on page 1-20](#).

translate_off and translate_on (Deprecated)

The `translate_off` and `translate_on` directives are deprecated. To suspend translation of the source code for synthesis, use the `SYNTHESIS` macro and the appropriate conditional directives (``ifdef`, ``ifndef`, ``else`, ``endif`) rather than `translate_off` and `translate_on`.

The `SYNTHESIS` macro replaces the `DC` macro (`DC` is still supported for backward compatibility). See [“Predefined Macros” on page 1-19](#).

8

HDL Compiler Variables

This chapter describes the Verilog reading and writing variables in the following sections:

- [HDL Compiler Reading-Related Variables](#)
- [Commands for Writing Out Verilog](#)
- [Variables for Writing Out Verilog](#)

HDL Compiler Reading-Related Variables

Reading-related variables are described in [Table 8-1](#). For more information about these variables, see the man pages.

Table 8-1 Reading-Related Variables

Name	Default	Description
<code>bus_inference_style</code>	<code>" "</code>	Specifies the pattern used to infer individual bits into a port bus.
<code>bus_naming_style</code>	<code>{%s[%d]}</code>	Controls the naming of elements in an array.
<code>hdlin_auto_save_templates</code>	<code>false</code>	Controls whether designs containing parameters are read in as templates. See “Reading Verilog Designs” on page 1-2 . When set to true, the automatic netlist reader is disabled.
<code>hdlin_build_selectop_for_var_index</code>	<code>false</code>	Specifies if <code>SELECT_OPS</code> should be built for variable indexing on rhs.
<code>hdlin_check_no_latch</code>	<code>false</code>	Controls whether a warning message is issued if a latch is inferred from a design. See “Preventing Unwanted Latches: <code>hdlin_check_no_latch</code>” on page 4-11 .
<code>hdlin_elab_errors_deep</code>	<code>false</code>	Allows the elaboration of submodules even if the top-level module elaboration fails, enabling HDL Compiler to report more elaboration, link, and VER-37 errors and warnings in a hierarchical design during the first elaboration run. See “Reporting Elaboration Errors” on page 1-7 .
<code>hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset</code>	<code>true</code>	When this variable is true, HDL Compiler attempts to infer asynchronous set and reset conditions for flip-flops.
<code>hdlin_ff_always_sync_set_reset</code>	<code>false</code>	When this variable is true, HDL Compiler attempts to infer synchronous set and reset conditions for flip-flops.
<code>hdlin_infer_enumerated_types</code>	<code>false</code>	Controls enumerated types inference. See “enum” on page 7-6 .
<code>hdlin_infer_function_local_latches</code>	<code>false</code>	Allows latches to be inferred for function- and task-scope variables. See “Persistence of Values Across Calls to Tasks” on page 2-18 .

Table 8-1 Reading-Related Variables (Continued)

Name	Default	Description
<code>hdlin_infer_multibit</code>	<code>default</code> <code>_none</code>	<p>Controls multibit inference for signals that have the <code>infer_multibit</code> directive in the Verilog description.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>default_none</code> (default)—Infers multibit components for signals that have the <code>infer_multibit</code> directive in the Verilog description. <code>default_all</code>—Infers multibit components for all bused registers, multiplexers, and three-state cells that are larger than 2 bits. If you want to implement as single-bit components all buses that are more than 4 bits, use <code>set_multibit_options -minimum_width 4</code>. This sets a <code>minimum_multibit_width</code> attribute on the design. (Use the <code>dont_infer_multibit</code> directive to disable multibit mapping for certain signals.) <code>never</code>—Does not infer multibit components, regardless of the attributes or directives in the HDL source. <p>See “Multibit Components” on page 2-20.</p>
<code>hdlin_infer_mux</code>	<code>default</code>	<p>Controls MUX_OP inference.</p> <p>To infer a MUX_OP, the case statement must actually be <code>parallel</code>, or an error is reported.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>default</code>—Infers MUX_OPs for parallel case and if statements that have the <code>infer_mux</code> directive attached. <code>none</code>—Does not infer MUX_OPs, regardless of the directives set in the RTL description. HDL Compiler generates a warning if <code>hdlin_infer_mux = none</code> and <code>infer_mux</code> are used in the RTL. <code>all</code>—Infers MUX_OPs for every parallel case and if statement in your design. This can negatively affect QoR, because it might be more efficient to implement the MUX_OPs as random logic instead of using a specialized multiplexer structure. <p>See “MUX_OP Inference” on page 3-15.</p>

Table 8-1 Reading-Related Variables (Continued)

Name	Default	Description
<code>hdlin_keep_signal_name</code>	<code>all_driving</code>	<p>Controls the preservation of nets and their respective net name.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>all</code>—Tries to preserve all signal names. <code>user</code>—Tries to preserve a signal name only when you label it with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. <code>all_driving</code> (default)—Tries to preserve all signal names that lead to outputs (no dangling nets). <code>user_driving</code>—Tries to preserve a signal name only when you label it with the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive and it leads to an output (no dangling nets). <code>none</code>—Does not try to preserve any signal name; overrides and ignores the <code>keep_signal_name</code> directive. <p>See “Keeping Signal Names” on page 2-20.</p>
<code>hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset</code>	<code>false</code>	<p>When this variable is true, HDL Compiler attempts to infer asynchronous set and reset conditions for latches. See “D Latch With Asynchronous Set and Reset: Use <code>hdlin_latch_always_async_set_reset</code>” on page 4-15.</p>
<code>hdlin_module_arch_name_splitting</code>	<code>true</code>	<p>Splits Verilog module names into entity/architecture portions by two subsequent underscores.</p>
<code>hdlin_mux_oversize_ratio</code>	<code>100</code>	<p>Defined as the ratio of the number of MUX_OP inputs to the unique number of data inputs. When this ratio is exceeded, a MUX_OP will not be inferred and the circuit will be generated with SELECT_OPs. See “MUX_OP Inference” on page 3-15.</p>

Table 8-1 Reading-Related Variables (Continued)

Name	Default	Description
hdlin_mux_size_limit	32	<p>Sets the maximum size of a MUX_OP that HDL Compiler can infer. If you set this variable to a value greater than 32, HDL Compiler may take an unusually long elaboration time.</p> <p>If the number of branches in a case statement exceeds the maximum size specified by this variable, HDL Compiler generates the following message:</p> <p>Warning: A mux was not inferred because case statement %s has a very large branching factor. (HDL-383)</p> <p>See “MUX_OP Inference” on page 3-15.</p>
hdlin_mux_size_min	2	<p>Sets the minimum number of data inputs for a MUX_OP inference. See “MUX_OP Inference” on page 3-15.</p>
hdlin_no_sequential_mapping	false	Prevents sequential mapping.
hdlin_one_hot_one_cold_on	true	Optimizes according to one_hot and one_cold attributes. See “one_cold” on page 7-14 and “one_hot” on page 7-14 .
hdlin_optimize_array_references	true	Optimizes constant offsets in array references.
hdlin_optimize_enum_types	false	Simplifies comparisons based on enumerated type information.

Table 8-1 Reading-Related Variables (Continued)

Name	Default	Description
<code>hdlin_preserve_sequential</code>	<code>none</code>	<p>Preserves unloaded sequential cells (latches or flip-flops) that would otherwise be removed during optimization by HDL Compiler. The following options are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>none</code> or <code>false</code>—No unloaded sequential cells are preserved. This is the default behavior. <code>all</code> or <code>true</code>—All unloaded sequential cells are preserved, excluding unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables. <code>all+loop_variables</code> or <code>true+loop_variables</code>—All unloaded sequential cells are preserved, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables. <code>ff</code>—Only flip-flop cells are preserved, excluding unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables. <code>ff+loop_variables</code>—Only flip-flop cells are preserved, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables. <code>latch</code>—Only unloaded latch cells are preserved, excluding unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables. <code>latch+loop_variables</code>—Only unloaded latch cells are preserved, including unloaded sequential cells that are used solely as loop variables. <p><i>Important:</i> To preserve unloaded cells through compile, you must set <code>compile_delete_unloaded_sequential_cells</code> to <code>false</code>.</p> <p>See “Keeping Unloaded Registers” on page 4-8.</p>
<code>hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple_drivers</code>	<code>true</code>	Issues an error when a non-tri net is driven by more than one processes or continuous assignment.
<code>hdlin_reporting_level</code>	<code>false</code>	Enables and disables the finite state machine inference report. For details, see “FSM Inference Report” on page 5-6 .
<code>hdlin_signed_division_use_shift</code>	<code>false</code>	Enables HDL Compiler to use shift to implement signed division.

Table 8-1 Reading-Related Variables (Continued)

Name	Default	Description
hdlin_subprogram_default_values	false	Reads tick-LEFT as default for variables instead of 0s.
hdlin_support_subprogram_var_init	false	Controls whether HDL Compiler honors the initial value given to a variable. When this variable is set to false, the default value, HDL Compiler issues a warning that the initial value given to a variable is being ignored.
hdlin_template_naming_style	"%s_%p"	Master variable for naming a design built from a template. The %s field is replaced by the name of the original design, and the %p field is replaced by the names of all the parameters.
hdlin_template_parameter_style	"%s%d"	Determines how each parameter is named. The %s field is replaced by the parameter name, and the %d field is replaced by the value of the parameter.
hdlin_template_separator_style	"_"	Contains a string that separates parameter names. This variable is used only for templates that have more than one parameter.
hdlin_upcase_names	false	Converts all Verilog names to uppercase.
hdlin_vrlg_std	2001	Specifies the Verilog standard to enforce (1995, 2001, or 2005). When set to 2005, HDL Compiler uses the generate construct definition added to the LRM in 2005. See “generate Statements” on page B-7 .

Commands for Writing Out Verilog

Any design, regardless of initial format (equation, netlist, and so on), can be written out as a Verilog design using the `change_names -rules verilog -hier` command and the `write -format verilog` command. The `change_names` command must be used before the `write` command.

Variables for Writing Out Verilog

The variables listed in [Table 8-2](#) affect how designs are written out as Verilog files. To override the default settings, set these variables before you write out the design.

To list the current values of the variables that affect writing out Verilog, enter

```
list -variables hdl
```

For more information about writing out designs, see the Design Compiler documentation.

Table 8-2 Verilogout Variables

Variable	Description
<code>verilogout_equation</code>	When this is set to true, Verilog assign statements (Boolean equations) are written out for combinational gates instead of for gate instantiations. Flip-flops and three-state cells are left instantiated. The default is false.
<code>verilogout_higher_designs_first</code>	When this is set to true, Verilog modules are ordered so that higher-level designs come before lower-level designs, as defined by the design hierarchy. The default is false.
<code>verilogout_no_tri</code>	When this is set to true, three-state nets are declared as Verilog wire instead of tri. This variable eliminates assign primitives and tran gates in your Verilog output, by connecting an output port directly to a component instantiation. The default is false.
<code>verilogout_single_bit</code>	When this variable is set to true, vectored ports (or ports that use record types) are bit-blasted; if a port's bit vector is <i>N</i> bits wide, it is written out to the Verilog file as <i>N</i> separate single-bit ports. When it is set to false, all ports are written out with their original data types. The default is false.
<code>verilogout_time_scale</code>	This variable determines the ratio of library time to simulator time and is used only by the <code>write_timing</code> command. The default is 1.0.

A

Examples

This appendix presents examples that demonstrate basic concepts of HDL Compiler. It also describes coding techniques for late-arriving signals and includes examples for SR latches, an asynchronously set D latch, master-slave latches, a D flip-flop with a synchronous set signal, and a JK flip-flop with synchronous set and reset signals. This appendix has the following sections:

- [Count Zeros—Combinational Version](#)
- [Count Zeros—Sequential Version](#)
- [Drink Machine—State Machine Version](#)
- [Drink Machine—Count Nickels Version](#)
- [Carry-Lookahead Adder](#)
- [Coding for Late-Arriving Signals](#)
- [Instantiation of Arrays of Instances](#)
- [SR Latches](#)
- [D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Use `async_set_reset`](#)
- [Inferring Master-Slave Latches](#)
- [Inferring Flip-Flops](#)

Count Zeros—Combinational Version

Using this circuit is one possible solution to a design problem. Given an 8-bit value, the circuit must determine two things:

- The presence of a value containing exactly one sequence of zeros
- The number of zeros in the sequence (if any)

The circuit must complete this computation in a single clock cycle. The input to the circuit is an 8-bit value, and the two outputs the circuit produces are the number of zeros found and an error indication.

A valid value contains only one series of zeros. If more than one series of zeros appears, the value is invalid. A value consisting of all ones is a valid value. If a value is invalid, the count of zeros is set to zero. For example,

- The value 00000000 is valid, and the count is eight zeros.
- The value 11000111 is valid, and the count is three zeros.
- The value 00111110 is invalid.

A Verilog description is shown in [Example A-1](#).

Example A-1 Count Zeros—Combinational

```
module count_zeros(in, out, error);
    input  [7:0] in;
    output [3:0] out;
    output error;
    function legal;
        input [7:0] x;
        reg seenZero, seenTrailing;
        integer i;
        begin : _legal_block
            legal = 1; seenZero = 0; seenTrailing = 0;
            for ( i=0; i <= 7; i=i+1 )
                if ( seenTrailing && (x[i] == 1'b0) ) begin
                    legal = 0;
                    disable _legal_block;
                end
                else if ( seenZero && (x[i] == 1'b1) )
                    seenTrailing = 1;
                else if ( x[i] == 1'b0 )
                    seenZero = 1;
            end
        endfunction

        function [3:0] zeros;
            input [7:0] x;
            reg [3:0] count;
```

```

integer i;

begin
    count = 0;
    for ( i=0; i <= 7; i=i+1 )
        if ( x[i] == 1'b0 ) count = count + 1;
    zeros = count;
end
endfunction
wire is_legal = legal(in);
assign error = ! is_legal;
assign out    = is_legal ? zeros(in) : 1'b0;
endmodule

```

This example shows two Verilog functions: `legal` and `zeros`. The function `legal` determines if the value is valid. It returns a 1-bit value: either 1 for a valid value or 0 for an invalid value. The function `zeros` cycles through all bits of the value, counts the number of zeros, and returns the appropriate value. The two functions are controlled by continuous assignment statements at the bottom of the module definition. This example shows a combinational (parallel) approach to counting zeros; the next example shows a sequential (serial) approach.

Count Zeros—Sequential Version

[Example A-2](#) shows a sequential (clocked) solution to the “count zeros” design problem. The circuit specification is slightly different from the specification in the combinational solution and needs an initial reset signal to start the operation. The circuit now accepts the 8-bit string serially, 1 bit per clock cycle, using the `data` and `clk` inputs. The other two inputs are

- `reset`, which resets the circuit
- `read`, which causes the circuit to begin accepting data

The circuit’s three outputs are

- `is_legal`, which is true if the data is a valid value
- `data_ready`, which is true at the first invalid bit or when all 8 bits have been processed
- `zeros`, which is the number of zeros if `is_legal` is true

Example A-2 Count Zeros—Sequential Version

```

module count_zeros(data,reset,read,clk,zeros,is_legal,
                  data_ready);

    parameter TRUE=1, FALSE=0;

    input  data, reset, read, clk;
    output is_legal, data_ready;
    output [3:0] zeros;
    reg [3:0] zeros;

    reg is_legal, data_ready;
    reg seenZero, new_seenZero;
    reg seenTrailing, new_seenTrailing;
    reg new_is_legal;
    reg new_data_ready;
    reg [3:0] new_zeros;
    reg [2:0] bits_seen, new_bits_seen;

    always @ ( data or reset or read or is_legal
              or
              data_ready or seenTrailing or
                  seenZero or zeros
              or bits_seen ) begin
        if ( reset ) begin
            new_data_ready  = FALSE;
            new_is_legal    = TRUE;
            new_seenZero    = FALSE;
            new_seenTrailing = FALSE;
            new_zeros       = 0;
            new_bits_seen   = 0;
        end
        else begin
            new_is_legal    = is_legal;
            new_seenZero    = seenZero;
            new_seenTrailing = seenTrailing;
            new_zeros       = zeros;
            new_bits_seen   = bits_seen;
            new_data_ready  = data_ready;
            if ( read ) begin
                if ( seenTrailing && (data == 0) )
                    begin
                        new_is_legal    = FALSE;
                        new_zeros       = 0;
                        new_data_ready  = TRUE;
                    end
                else if ( seenZero && (data == 1'b1) )
                    new_seenTrailing = TRUE;
                else if ( data == 1'b0 ) begin
                    new_seenZero = TRUE;
                    new_zeros = zeros + 1;
                end
            end
        end
    end
end

```

```

        if ( bits_seen == 7 )
            new_data_ready = TRUE;
        else
            new_bits_seen = bits_seen+1;
        end
    end
end
end

always @ ( posedge clk) begin
    zeros = new_zeros;
    bits_seen = new_bits_seen;
    seenZero = new_seenZero;
    seenTrailing = new_seenTrailing;
    is_legal = new_is_legal;
    data_ready = new_data_ready;
end
endmodule

```

Drink Machine—State Machine Version

The next design is a vending control unit for a soft drink vending machine. The circuit reads signals from a coin input unit and sends outputs to a change dispensing unit and a drink dispensing unit.

Input signals from the coin input unit are `nickel_in` (nickel deposited), `dime_in` (dime deposited), and `quarter_in` (quarter deposited).

The price of a drink is 35 cents. The Verilog description for this design, shown in [Example A-3](#), uses a state machine description style.

Example A-3 Drink Machine—State Machine Version

```

`define vend_a_drink {D,dispense,collect} = {IDLE,2'b11}

module drink_machine(nickel_in, dime_in, quarter_in,
                    collect, nickel_out, dime_out,
                    dispense, reset, clk) ;
    parameter IDLE=3'd0,    FIVE=3'd1,    TEN=3'd2,    TWENTY_FIVE=3'd3,
              FIFTEEN=3'd4, THIRTY=3'd5, TWENTY=3'd6, OWE_DIME=3'd7;

    input  nickel_in, dime_in, quarter_in, reset, clk;
    output collect, nickel_out, dime_out, dispense;

    reg collect, nickel_out, dime_out, dispense;
    reg [2:0] D, Q; /* state */

    always @ ( nickel_in or dime_in or quarter_in or reset or Q )
        begin
            nickel_out = 0;
            dime_out   = 0;
            dispense   = 0;
            collect    = 0;

```

```

if ( reset ) D = IDLE;
else begin
    D = Q;

    case ( Q )
    IDLE:
        if (nickel_in)      D = FIVE;
        else if (dime_in)   D = TEN;
        else if (quarter_in) D = TWENTY_FIVE;
    FIVE:
        if(nickel_in)      D = TEN;
        else if (dime_in)   D = FIFTEEN;
        else if (quarter_in) D = THIRTY;
    TEN:
        if (nickel_in)      D = FIFTEEN;
        else if (dime_in)   D = TWENTY;
        else if (quarter_in) `vend_a_drink;
    TWENTY_FIVE:
        if( nickel_in)      D = THIRTY;
        else if (dime_in)   `vend_a_drink;
        else if (quarter_in) begin

            `vend_a_drink;
            nickel_out = 1;
            dime_out = 1;
        end

    FIFTEEN:
        if (nickel_in)      D = TWENTY;
        else if (dime_in)   D = TWENTY_FIVE;
        else if (quarter_in) begin
            `vend_a_drink;
            nickel_out = 1;
        end

    THIRTY:
        if (nickel_in)      `vend_a_drink;
        else if (dime_in)   begin
            `vend_a_drink;
            nickel_out = 1;
        end
        else if (quarter_in) begin
            `vend_a_drink;
            dime_out = 1;
            D = OWE_DIME;
        end

    TWENTY:
        if (nickel_in)      D = TWENTY_FIVE;
        else if (dime_in)   D = THIRTY;
        else if (quarter_in) begin
            `vend_a_drink;
            dime_out = 1;
        end

    OWE_DIME:
        begin

```

```

        dime_out = 1;
        D = IDLE;
    end
endcase
end
end

always @ (posedge clk ) begin
    Q = D;
end
endmodule

```

Drink Machine—Count Nickels Version

[Example A-4](#) uses the same design parameters as [Example A-3](#), with the same input and output signals. In this version, a counter counts the number of nickels deposited. This counter is incremented by 1 if the deposit is a nickel, by 2 if it's a dime, and by 5 if it's a quarter.

Example A-4 Drink Machine—Count Nickels Version

```

module drink_machine(nickel_in,dime_in,quarter_in,collect,
    nickel_out,dime_out,dispense,reset,clk);

    input nickel_in, dime_in, quarter_in, reset, clk;
    output nickel_out, dime_out, collect, dispense;

    reg nickel_out, dime_out, dispense, collect;
    reg [3:0] nickel_count, temp_nickel_count;
    reg temp_return_change, return_change;

    always @ ( nickel_in or dime_in or quarter_in or
        collect or temp_nickel_count or
        reset or nickel_count or return_change) begin
        nickel_out = 0;
        dime_out  = 0;
        dispense  = 0;
        collect   = 0;
        temp_nickel_count = 0;
        temp_return_change = 0;

        // Check whether money has come in
        if (! reset) begin
            temp_nickel_count = nickel_count;
            if (nickel_in)
                temp_nickel_count = temp_nickel_count + 1;
            else if (dime_in)
                temp_nickel_count = temp_nickel_count + 2;
            else if (quarter_in)
                temp_nickel_count = temp_nickel_count + 5;

            // correct amount deposited?
            if (temp_nickel_count >= 7) begin
                temp_nickel_count = temp_nickel_count - 7;
                dispense = 1;
            end
        end
    end
endmodule

```

```

        collect = 1;
    end
    // return change
    if (return_change || collect) begin
        if (temp_nickel_count >= 2) begin
            dime_out = 1;
            temp_nickel_count = temp_nickel_count - 2;
            temp_return_change = 1;
        end

        if (temp_nickel_count == 1) begin
            nickel_out = 1;
            temp_nickel_count = temp_nickel_count - 1;
        end
    end
end
end
always @ (posedge clk ) begin
    nickel_count = temp_nickel_count;
    return_change = temp_return_change;
end
endmodule

```

Carry-Lookahead Adder

[Figure A-1 on page A-10](#) and [Example A-5 on page A-11](#) show how to build a 32-bit carry-lookahead adder. The adder is built by partitioning of the 32-bit input into eight slices of 4 bits each. The PG module computes propagate and generate values for each of the eight slices.

Propagate (output P from PG) is 1 for a bit position if that position propagates a carry from the next-lower position to the next-higher position. Generate (output G) is 1 for a bit position if that position generates a carry to the next-higher position, regardless of the carry-in from the next-lower position.

The carry-lookahead logic reads the carry-in, propagate, and generate information computed from the inputs. It computes the carry value for each bit position. This logic makes the addition operation an XOR of the inputs and the carry values.

The following list shows the order in which the carry values are computed by a three-level tree of 4-bit carry-lookahead blocks (illustrated in [Figure A-1](#)):

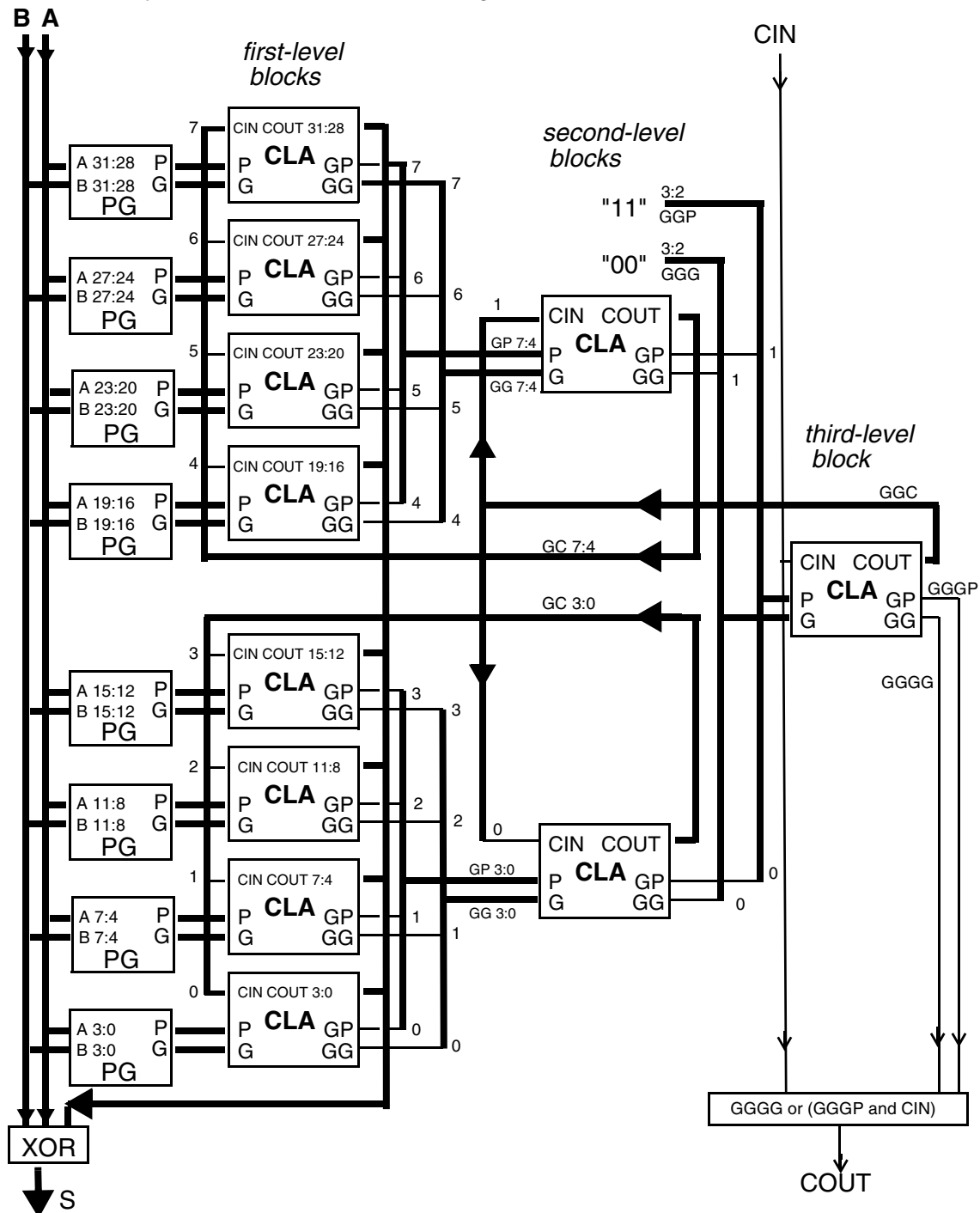
1. The first level of the tree computes the 32 carry values and the 8 group propagate and generate values. Each of the first-level group propagate and generate values tells if that 4-bit slice propagates and generates carry values from the next-lower group to the next-higher. The first-level lookahead blocks read the group carry computed at the second level.

2. At the second level of the tree, the lookahead blocks read the group propagate and generate information from the four first-level blocks and then compute their own group propagate and generate information. They also read group carry information computed at the third level to compute the carries for each of the third-level blocks.
3. At the third level of the tree, the third-level block reads the propagate and generate information of the second level to compute a propagate and generate value for the entire adder. It also reads the external carry to compute each second-level carry. The carry-out for the adder is 1 if the third-level generate is 1 or if the third-level propagate is 1 and the external carry is 1.

The third-level carry-lookahead block can process four second-level blocks. Because there are only two second-level blocks in [Figure A-1](#), the high-order 2 bits of the computed carry are ignored, the high-order 2 bits of the generate input to the third-level are set to 00 (zero), and the propagate high-order bits are set to 11. This causes the unused portion to propagate carries but not to generate them.

[Figure A-1](#) shows the three levels of a block diagram of the 32-bit carry-lookahead adder. [Example A-5](#) shows the code for the adder.

Figure A-1 Carry-Lookahead Adder Block Diagram



Example A-5 Carry-Lookahead Adder

```

`define word_size 32
`define word [`word_size-1:0]

`define n 4
`define slice [`n-1:0]

`define s0 (1*`n)-1:0*`n
`define s1 (2*`n)-1:1*`n
`define s2 (3*`n)-1:2*`n
`define s3 (4*`n)-1:3*`n
`define s4 (5*`n)-1:4*`n
`define s5 (6*`n)-1:5*`n
`define s6 (7*`n)-1:6*`n
`define s7 (8*`n)-1:7*`n

module cla32_4(a, b, cin, s, cout);
input `word a, b;
input cin;
output `word s;
output cout;

    wire [7:0] gg, gp, gc; // Group generate, propagate,
                          // carry
    wire [3:0] ggg, ggp, ggc; // Second-level gen., prop.
    wire gggg, ggpp; // Third-level gen., prop.

    bitslice i0(a[`s0], b[`s0], gc[0], s[`s0], gp[0], gg[0]);
    bitslice i1(a[`s1], b[`s1], gc[1], s[`s1], gp[1], gg[1]);
    bitslice i2(a[`s2], b[`s2], gc[2], s[`s2], gp[2], gg[2]);
    bitslice i3(a[`s3], b[`s3], gc[3], s[`s3], gp[3], gg[3]);

    bitslice i4(a[`s4], b[`s4], gc[4], s[`s4], gp[4], gg[4]);
    bitslice i5(a[`s5], b[`s5], gc[5], s[`s5], gp[5], gg[5]);
    bitslice i6(a[`s6], b[`s6], gc[6], s[`s6], gp[6], gg[6]);
    bitslice i7(a[`s7], b[`s7], gc[7], s[`s7], gp[7], gg[7]);

    cla c0(gp[3:0], gg[3:0], ggc[0], gc[3:0], ggp[0], ggg[0]);
    cla c1(gp[7:4], gg[7:4], ggc[1], gc[7:4], ggp[1], ggg[1]);

    assign ggp[3:2] = 2'b11;
    assign ggg[3:2] = 2'b00;
    cla c2(ggp, ggg, cin, ggc, ggpp, gggg);
    assign cout = gggg | (ggpp & cin);
endmodule

// Compute sum and group outputs from a, b, cin

module bitslice(a, b, cin, s, gp, gg);
input `slice a, b;
input cin;
output `slice s;
output gp, gg;

    wire `slice p, g, c;
    pg i1(a, b, p, g);
    cla i2(p, g, cin, c, gp, gg);
    sum i3(a, b, c, s);

```

```

endmodule

// compute propagate and generate from input bits

module pg(a, b, p, g);
input `slice a, b;
output `slice p, g;

    assign p = a | b;
    assign g = a & b;
endmodule

// compute sum from the input bits and the carries

module sum(a, b, c, s);
input `slice a, b, c;
output `slice s;

    wire `slice t = a ^ b;
    assign s = t ^ c;
endmodule

// n-bit carry-lookahead block

module cla(p, g, cin, c, gp, gg);
input `slice p, g; // propagate and generate bits
input cin;         // carry in
output `slice c;   // carry produced for each bit
output gp, gg;     // group generate and group propagate

    function [99:0] do_cla;
    input `slice p, g;
    input cin;

    begin : label
    integer i;
    reg gp, gg;
    reg `slice c;
    gp = p[0];
    gg = g[0];
    c[0] = cin;
    for (i = 1; i < `n; i = i+1) begin
        gp = gp & p[i];
        gg = (gg & p[i]) | g[i];
        c[i] = (c[i-1] & p[i-1]) | g[i-1];
    end
    do_cla = {c, gp, gg};
    end
    endfunction

    assign {c, gp, gg} = do_cla(p, g, cin);
endmodule

```

Coding for Late-Arriving Signals

The following sections discuss coding techniques for late-arriving signals:

- [Datapath Duplication](#)
- [Moving Late-Arriving Signals Closer to the Output](#)

Note that these techniques apply to HDL Compiler output. When this output is constrained and optimized by Design Compiler, your structure might be changed, depending on such factors as your design constraints and option settings. See the Design Compiler documentation for details.

Datapath Duplication

The following examples illustrate how to duplicate logic to improve timing. In [Example A-6](#), `CONTROL` is a late-arriving input signal that selects between two inputs. The selected input drives a chain of arithmetic operations and ends at the output port `COUNT`. Note that `CONTROL` is needed to complete the first operation. In [Example A-6](#), notice that there is a `SELECT_OP` next to a subtracter. (For more information about `SELECT_OP`, see [“SELECT_OP Inference” on page 3-13](#).) When you see a `SELECT_OP` next to an operator, you can usually move it to after the operator by duplicating the logic in the branches of the conditional statement that implied the `SELECT_OP`. [Example A-7](#) shows this datapath duplication.

When you duplicate the operations that depend on the inputs `PTR1` and `PTR2`, the assignment to `COUNT` becomes a selection between the two parallel datapaths. The signal `CONTROL` selects the datapath. The path from `CONTROL` to the output port `COUNT` is no longer the critical path, but this change comes at the expense of duplicated logic.

In [Example A-7](#), the entire datapath is duplicated, because `CONTROL` arrives late. Had `CONTROL` arrived earlier, you could have duplicated only a portion of the logic, thereby decreasing the area expense. The designer controls how much logic is duplicated.

Example A-6 Code and Structure

```
module BEFORE (ADDRESS, PTR1, PTR2, B, CONTROL, COUNT);
  input [7:0] PTR1, PTR2;
  input [15:0] ADDRESS, B;

  // CONTROL is late arriving

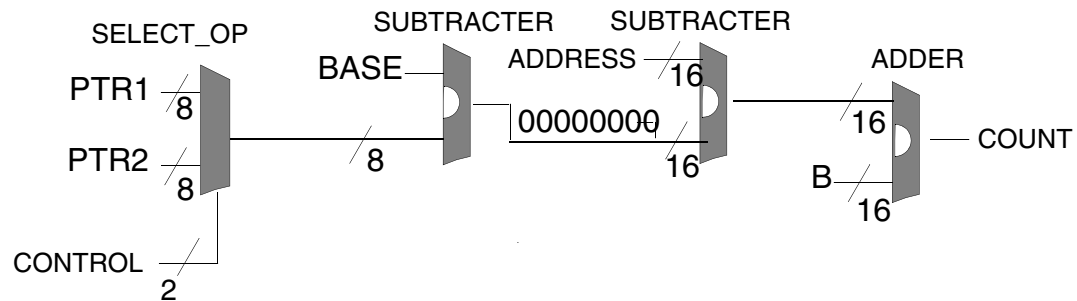
  input CONTROL;
  output [15:0] COUNT;
  parameter [7:0] BASE = 8'b10000000;
  wire [7:0] PTR, OFFSET;
  wire [15:0] ADDR;
  assign PTR = (CONTROL == 1'b1) ? PTR1 : PTR2;
```

```

        // Could be any function f(BASE,PTR)

    assign OFFSET = BASE - PTR;
    assign ADDR = ADDRESS - {8'h00, OFFSET};
    assign COUNT = ADDR + B;
endmodule

```

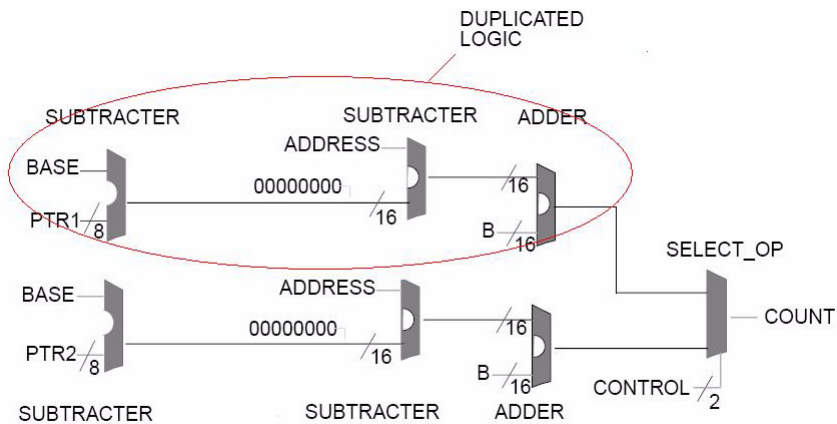


Example A-7 Datapath Duplicated Code and Structure

```

module PRECOMPUTED (ADDRESS, PTR1, PTR2, B, CONTROL, COUNT);
    input [7:0] PTR1, PTR2;
    input [15:0] ADDRESS, B;
    input CONTROL;
    output [15:0] COUNT;
    parameter [7:0] BASE = 8'b100000000;
    wire [7:0] OFFSET1, OFFSET2;
    wire [15:0] ADDR1, ADDR2, COUNT1, COUNT2;
    assign OFFSET1 = BASE - PTR1; // Could be f(BASE, PTR)
    assign OFFSET2 = BASE - PTR2; // Could be f(BASE, PTR)
    assign ADDR1 = ADDRESS - {8'h00, OFFSET1};
    assign ADDR2 = ADDRESS - {8'h00, OFFSET2};
    assign COUNT1 = ADDR1 + B;
    assign COUNT2 = ADDR2 + B;
    assign COUNT = (CONTROL == 1'b1) ? COUNT1 : COUNT2;
endmodule

```



The amount of datapath duplication is proportional to the number of branches in the conditional statement. For example, if there were four PTR signals in [Example A-6](#) instead of two (PTR1 and PTR2), the area penalty would be larger, because you would have two more duplicated datapaths.

In general, the improved design with the datapath duplicated is better with respect to timing but the area is larger. Note that logic duplication also increases the load on the input pins.

Moving Late-Arriving Signals Closer to the Output

Designers usually know which signals in a design are late-arriving. This knowledge can be used to structure HDL so that the late-arriving signals are close to the output. The following sections give examples of if and case statements for late-arriving signals:

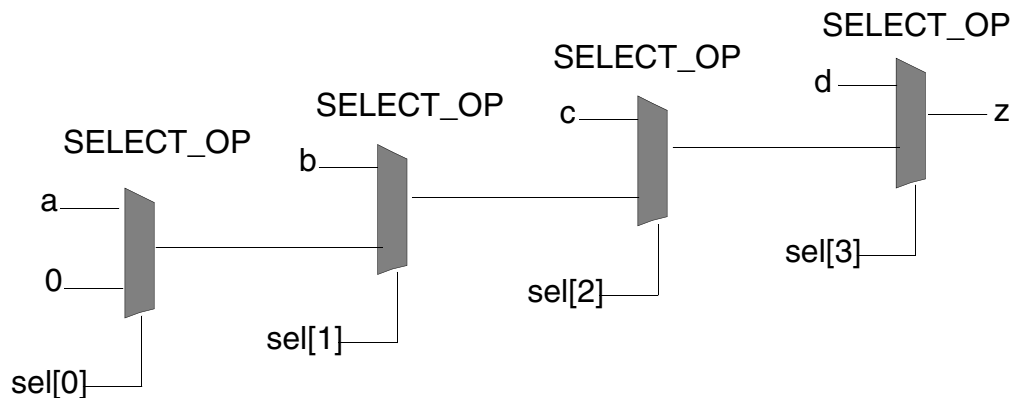
- [Overview](#)
- [Late-Arriving Data Signal](#)
- [Recoding for Late-Arriving Data Signal: Case 1](#)
- [Recoding for Late-Arriving Data Signal: Case 2](#)
- [Late-Arriving Control Signal](#)
- [Recoding for Late-Arriving Control Signal](#)

Overview

Sequential if statements allow you to create a priority-encoded implementation that can help in handling late-arriving signals. Assignment priority is from bottom to top, that is, the last if statement in your code translates to the data signal in the last SELECT_OP in the chain of SELECT_OPs as shown in [Example A-8](#).

Example A-8

```
module mult_if(a, b, c, d, sel, z);
  input a, b, c, d;
  input [3:0] sel;
  output z;
  reg z;
  always @(a or b or c or d or sel)
  begin
    z = 0;
    if (sel[0]) z = a;
    if (sel[1]) z = b;
    if (sel[2]) z = c;
    if (sel[3]) z = d;
  end
endmodule
```



In [Example A-8](#), sel[0] and a have the longest delay to the output z; sel[3] and d have the shortest delay to the output.

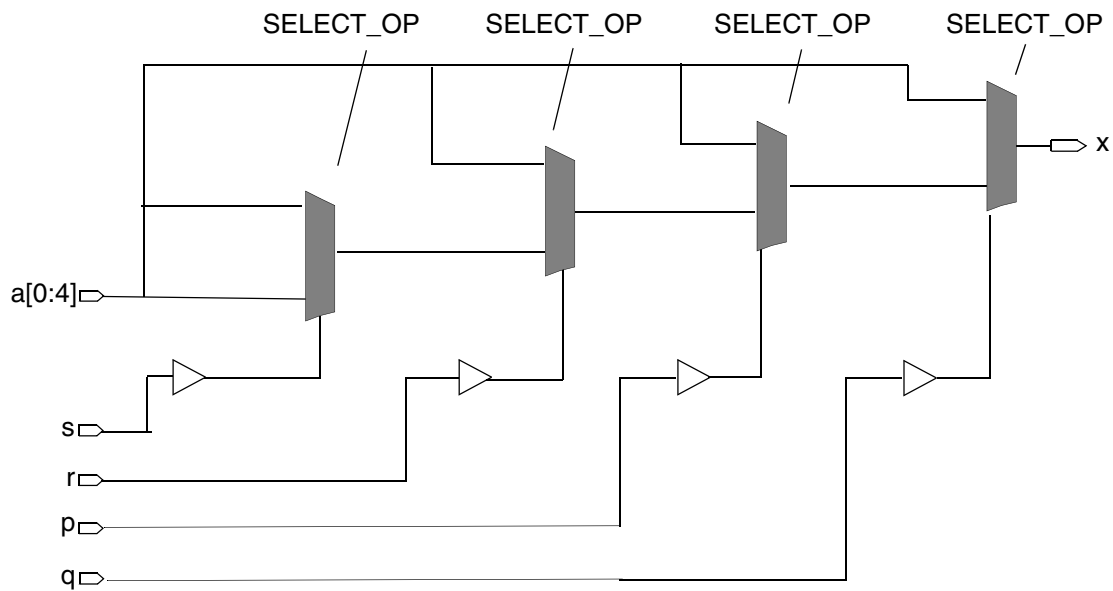
If you use the if-else-begin-if construct to build a priority encoded MUX, you must use named *begin* blocks in the code, as shown in [Example A-9](#).

Example A-9

```

module m1 (p, q, r, s, a, x);
  input p, q, r, s;
  input [0:4] a;
  output x;
  reg x;
  always @(a or p or q or r or s)
    if ( p )
      x = a[0];
    else begin :b1
      if ( q )
        x = a[1];
      else begin :b2
        if ( r )
          x = a[2];
        else begin :b3
          if ( s )
            x = a[3];
          else
            x = a[4];
          end
        end
      end
    end
  end
end
endmodule

```



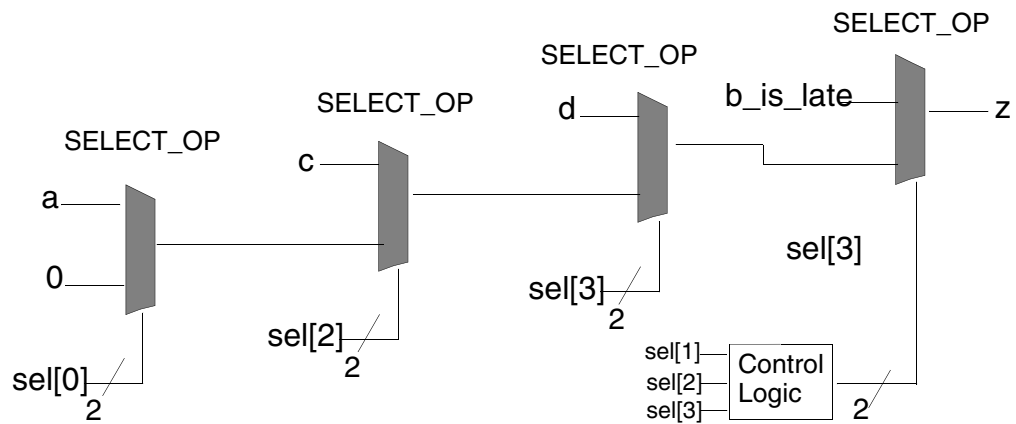
Late-Arriving Data Signal

[Example A-10](#) shows code designed to accommodate the late-arriving data signal, `b_is_late`. This code has `b_is_late` as close as possible to the output `z`.

Example A-10

```
module mult_if_improved(a, b_is_late, c, d, sel, z);
  input a, b_is_late, c, d;
  input [3:0] sel;
  output z;
  reg z, z1;

  always @(a or b_is_late or c or d or sel)
  begin
    z1 = 0;
    if (sel[0])
      z1 = a;
    if (sel[2])
      z1 = c;
    if (sel[3])
      z1 = d;
    if (sel[1] & ~(sel[2] | sel[3]))
      z = b_is_late;
    else
      z = z1;
  end
endmodule
```



Recoding for Late-Arriving Data Signal: Case 1

[Example A-11](#) shows code that contains operators in the conditional expression of an if statement; [Figure A-2](#) shows the structure implied by the code. The signal A in the conditional expression is a late-arriving signal, so you should move the signal closer to the output.

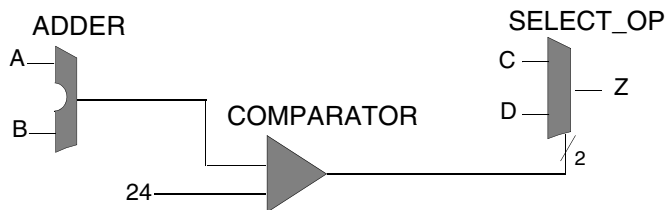
Example A-11 Input A Is Late-Arriving

```
module cond_oper (A, B, C, D, Z);
  parameter N = 8;

  // A is late arriving

  input [N-1:0] A, B, C, D;
  output [N-1:0] Z;
  reg [N-1:0] Z;
  always @(A or B or C or D)
  begin
    if (A + B < 24)
      Z <= C;
    else
      Z <= D;
  end
endmodule
```

Figure A-2 Original Structure



[Example A-12](#) restructures the code to do this; [Figure A-3](#) shows the resulting implementation.

Example A-12 Improved Verilog With Operator in Conditional Expression

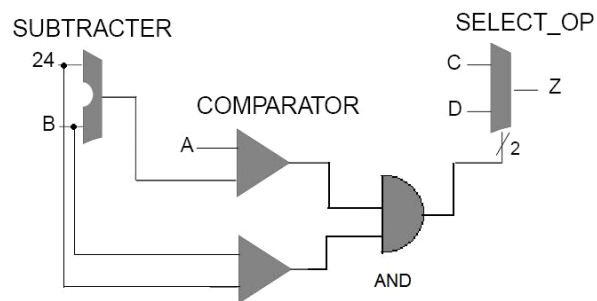
```

module cond_oper_improved (A, B, C, D, Z);
  parameter N = 8;

  // A is late arriving

  input [N-1:0] A, B, C, D;
  output [N-1:0] Z;
  reg [N-1:0] Z;
  always @(A or B or C or D)
  begin
    if ( B < 24 && A < 24 - B)
      Z <= C;
    else
      Z <= D;
  end
end

```

Figure A-3 Recoded Structure**Recoding for Late-Arriving Data Signal: Case 2**

[Example A-13](#) shows a case statement nested in an if statement. The data signal `DATA_is_late_arriving` is late-arriving.

Example A-13 Original Code

```

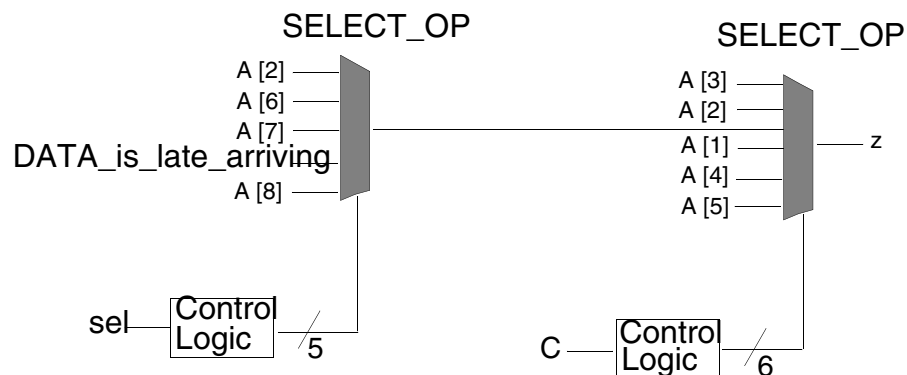
module case_in_if_01(A, DATA_is_late_arriving, C, sel, Z);
  input [8:1] A;
  input DATA_is_late_arriving;
  input [2:0] sel;
  input [5:1] C;
  output Z;
  reg Z;

  always @ (sel or C or A or DATA_is_late_arriving)
  begin
    if (C[1])
      Z = A[5];
    else if (C[2] == 1'b0)
      Z = A[4];
    else if (C[3])
      Z = A[1];
    else if (C[4])
      case (sel)
        3'b010: Z = A[8];
        3'b011: Z = DATA_is_late_arriving;
        3'b101: Z = A[7];
        3'b110: Z = A[6];
        default: Z = A[2];
      endcase
    else if (C[5] == 1'b0)
      Z = A[2];
    else
      Z = A[3];
    end
  end
endmodule

```

Figure A-4 shows the structure implied by the code in [Example A-13](#).

Figure A-4 Structure Implied by Original Code in [Example A-13](#)



The late-arriving signal, `DATA_is_late_arriving`, is an input to the first `SELECT_OP` in the path. To improve the startpoint for synthesis, modify the HDL to move `DATA_is_late_arriving` closer to the output `Z`.

You can do this by moving the assignment of `DATA_is_late_arriving` out of the nested case statement into a separate if statement. This makes `DATA_is_late_arriving` an input to another `SELECT_OP` that is closer to the output port `Z`.

[Example A-14](#) shows the improved version of the code shown in [Example A-13](#).

Example A-14 Improved Code

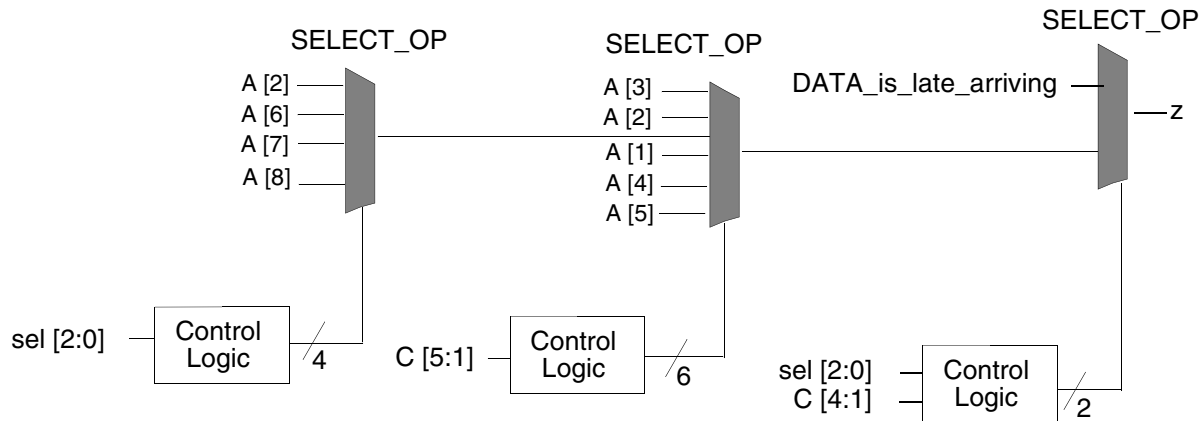
```
module case_in_if_01_improved(A,DATA_is_late_arriving,C,sel,Z);
    input [8:1] A;
    input DATA_is_late_arriving;
    input [2:0] sel;
    input [5:1] C;
    output Z;
    reg Z;
    reg Z1, FIRST_IF;

    always @(sel or C or A or DATA_is_late_arriving)
    begin
        if (C[1])
            Z1 = A[5];
        else if (C[2] == 1'b0)
            Z1 = A[4];
        else if (C[3])
            Z1 = A[1];
        else if (C[4])
            case (sel)
                3'b010: Z1 = A[8];
                //3'b011: Z1 = DATA_is_late_arriving;
                3'b101: Z1 = A[7];
                3'b110: Z1 = A[6];
                default: Z1 = A[2];
            endcase
        else if (C[5] == 1'b0)
            Z1 = A[2];
        else
            Z1 = A[3];

        FIRST_IF = (C[1] == 1'b1) || (C[2] == 1'b0) || (C[3] == 1'b1);

        if (!FIRST_IF && C[4] && (sel == 3'b011))
            Z = DATA_is_late_arriving;
        else
            Z = Z1;
        end
    endmodule
```

The structure implied by the modified HDL in [Example A-14](#) is given in [Figure A-5](#).

Figure A-5 Structure Implied by Improved HDL in [Example A-14](#)

Late-Arriving Control Signal

If you have a late-arriving control signal, code it close to the output, as shown in [Example A-15](#). [Figure A-6](#) shows the structure. Note that CTRL_is_late_arriving is as close to the output as possible.

Example A-15

```
module single_if_improved(A, C, CTRL_is_late_arriving, Z);
  input [6:1] A;
  input [5:1] C;
  input CTRL_is_late_arriving;
  output Z;
  reg Z;
  reg Z1;
  wire Z2, prev_cond;

  always @(A or C)
  begin
    if (C[1] == 1'b1) begin: b1
      Z1 = A[1];
    end else if (C[2] == 1'b0) begin: b2
      Z1 = A[2];
    end else if (C[3] == 1'b1) begin: b3
      Z1 = A[3];
    // remove the branch with the late-arriving control signal
    end else if (C[5] == 1'b0) begin: b4
      Z1 = A[5]; //
    end else
      Z1 = A[6];
  end

  assign Z2 = A[4];
  assign prev_cond = (C[1] == 1'b1) || (C[2] == 1'b0) || (C[3] == 1'b1);

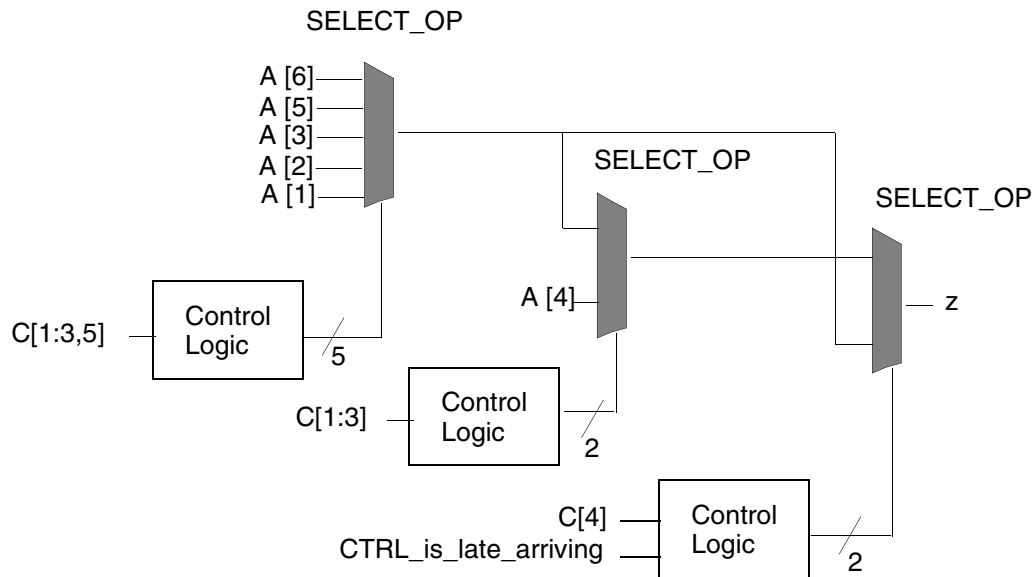
  always @(C or prev_cond or CTRL_is_late_arriving or Z1 or Z2)
```

```

begin
  if (C[4] == 1'b1 && CTRL_is_late_arriving == 1'b0)
    if (prev_cond)
      Z = Z1;
    else
      Z = Z2;
  else
    Z = Z1;
  end
endmodule

```

Figure A-6 Late-Arriving Control Signal



Recoding for Late-Arriving Control Signal

Example A-16 shows an if statement nested in a case statement. This example assumes that sel[1] is a late-arriving signal.

Example A-16 Original Code

```

module if_in_case(sel, X, A, B, C, D, Z);
input [2:0] sel; // sel[1] is late arriving
input X, A, B, C, D;
output Z;
reg Z;

always @(sel or X or A or B or C or D)
begin
    case (sel)
        3'b000: Z = A;
        3'b001: Z = B;
        3'b010: if (X == 1'b1)
                    Z = C;
                else
                    Z = D;
        3'b100: Z = A ^ B;
        3'b101: Z = !(A && B);
        3'b111: Z = !A;
        default: Z = !B;
    endcase
end
endmodule

```

In [Example A-16](#), you know that sel[1] is a late-arriving input. Therefore, you should restructure the code in [Example A-16](#) to get the best startpoint for synthesis.

[Example A-17](#) shows modified code that shifts the dependency on sel[1] closer to the output; that is, it moves sel[1] closer to the output and the nested if statement is removed and placed outside the case statement. This code computes two possible values for z into new variables z1 and z2. These represent what the final value of z will be if sel[1] is 0 and 1, respectively. Then, a final if statement checks the actual value of sel[1] to select between z1 and z2. Because sel[1] is closer to the output, it improves timing if sel[1] is late.

Example A-17 Improved Code

```

module if_in_case_improved(sel, X, A, B, C, D, Z);
    input [2:0] sel; // sel[1] is late arriving
    input X, A, B, C, D;
    output Z;
    reg Z;
    reg Z1, Z2;
    reg [1:0] i_sel;

    always @ (sel or X or A or B or C or D)
    begin
        i_sel = {sel[2],sel[0]};
        case (i_sel) // for sel[1]=0
            2'b00: Z1 = A;
            2'b01: Z1 = B;
            2'b10: Z1 = A ^ B;
            2'b11: Z1 = !(A && B);
            default: Z1 = !B;
        endcase

        case (i_sel) // for sel[1]=1
            2'b00:if (X == 1'b1)
                        Z2 = C;
                    else
                        Z2 = D;
            2'b11: Z2 = !A;
            default: Z2 = !B;
        endcase
        if (sel[1])
            Z = Z2;
        else
            Z = Z1;
        end
    endmodule

```

Instantiation of Arrays of Instances

This feature enables instantiations of modules that contain a range specification, which, in turn, allows an array of instances to be created. In [Example A-18](#), the `my_pipeline` module creates a single pipeline with two stages, as shown in [Figure A-7](#).

Example A-18 Module Test

```

module my_pipeline ( D, CK, Q );
    input D, CK;
    output Q;
    reg Q0, Q;
    always @ (posedge CK)
    begin
        Q0 <= D;

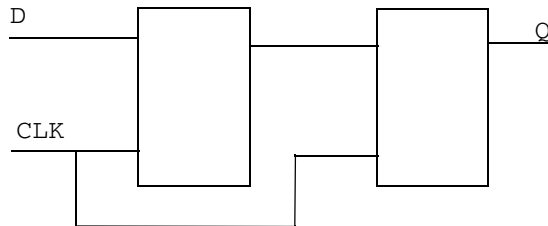
```

```

        Q <= Q0;
    end
endmodule

```

Figure A-7 *my_pipeline Design*



In [Example A-19](#), the `array_inst` module instantiates the `my_pipeline` module to make three pipelines three stages deep, as shown in [Figure A-8](#).

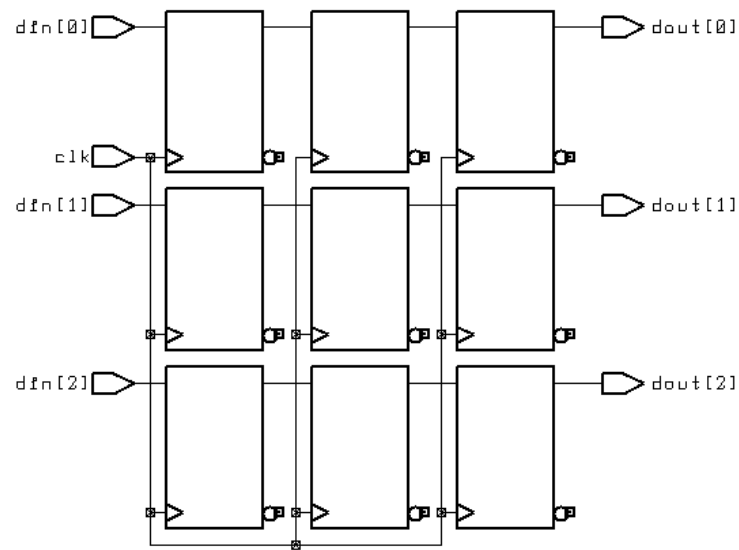
Example A-19 *Arrays of Instances*

```

module array_inst (clk, din, dout);
    parameter N=3;
    input clk;
    input [N-1:0] din;
    output [N-1:0] dout;
    reg [N-1:0] idout;
    wire [N-1:0] idout;
    my_pipeline my_pipeline1[N-1:0] (.D(din), .CK(clk), .Q(idout));
    always @ (posedge clk)
    begin
        dout <= idout;
    end
endmodule

module my_pipeline ( D, CK, Q );
    input D, CK;
    output Q;
    reg Q0, Q;
    always @ (posedge CK)
    begin
        Q0 <= D;
        Q <= Q0;
    end
endmodule

```

Figure A-8 *array_inst Design*

In the following example of array instantiation, the inputs and outputs do not match.

```

module dff (d, ck, q);
    input d, ck;
    output q;
    .
    .
    .
    input ck;
    input [0:3] d;
    output [0:3] q;

    dff ff[0:3] (d, ck, q);
    .
    .
    .

```

Here, four copies of the dff module are instantiated. HDL Compiler unrolls the array instantiation as follows:

```

input ck;
input [0:3] d;
output [0:3] q;

dff ff_0 (d[0], ck, q[0]);
dff ff_1 (d[1], ck, q[1]);
dff ff_2 (d[2], ck, q[2]);
dff ff_3 (d[3], ck, q[3]);

```

Note that `ck` is connected to each instance, whereas `d` and `q` have one bit connected to each instance.

In this next example of array instantiation, `x` exactly matches the width of `d` on the submodule, so its full width is connected to each instantiated module.

```
module submod (d, ck, q);
    input [0:3] d;
    input ck;
    output q;
    .
    .
    .
    input ck;
    input [0:3] x;
    output [0:3] y;

    submod ff[0:3] (x, ck, y);
```

HDL Compiler unrolls the array instantiation as follows:

```
input ck;
input [0:3] d;
output [0:3] q;

submod M_0 (x, ck, y[0]);
submod M_1 (x, ck, y[1]);
submod M_2 (x, ck, y[2]);
submod M_3 (x, ck, y[3]);
```

In this next example of array instantiation, note that the declared ordering of bits `[3:0]` of `y` does not affect the instantiation of `submod` (compare it to the previous example). Bits are connected by position, not by number.

```
module submod (d, ck, q);
    input [0:3] d;
    input ck;
    output q;
    .
    .
    .
    input ck;
    input [0:3] x;
    output [3:0] y;

    submod ff[0:3] (x, ck, y);
```

HDL Compiler unrolls the array instantiation as follows:

```
input ck;
input [0:3] d;
```

```

output [0:3] q;

submod M_0 (x, ck, y[0]);
submod M_1 (x, ck, y[1]);
submod M_2 (x, ck, y[2]);
submod M_3 (x, ck, y[3]);

```

SR Latches

Use SR latches with caution because they are difficult to test. If you decide to use SR latches, verify that the inputs are hazard-free (that they do not glitch). During synthesis, Design Compiler does not ensure that the logic driving the inputs is hazard-free.

[Example A-20](#) shows the Verilog code that implements an inferred SR latch whose truth table is described in [Table A-1](#). [Example A-21](#) shows the inference report.

Table A-1 SR Latch Truth Table (NAND Type)

set	reset	y
0	0	Not stable
0	1	1
1	0	0
1	1	y

Example A-20 SR Latch Code

```

module sr_latch (SET, RESET, Q);
  input SET, RESET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;

  //synopsys async_set_reset"SET,RESET"
  always @(RESET or SET)
    if (~RESET)
      Q = 0;
    else if (~SET)
      Q = 1;
endmodule

```

Example A-21 SR Latch Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	Y	Y	-	-	-

D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Use `async_set_reset`

[Example A-22](#) shows the recommended coding style for an asynchronously set latch using the `async_set_reset` directive.

Example A-22 D Latch With Asynchronous Set: Uses `async_set_reset`

```

module d_latch_async_set (GATE, DATA, SET, Q);
  input GATE, DATA, SET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;

  //synopsys async_set_reset "SET"
  always @(GATE or DATA or SET)
    if (~SET)
      Q = 1'b1;
    else if (GATE)
      Q = DATA;
endmodule

```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example A-23](#).

Example A-23 Inference Report for D Latch With Asynchronous Set

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	Y	-	-	-

Inferring Master-Slave Latches

Master-slave latches are described in the following sections:

- [Master-Slave Latch Overview](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch With Single Master-Slave Clock Pair](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch With Multiple Master-Slave Clock Pairs](#)
- [Master-Slave Latch With Discrete Components](#)

Master-Slave Latch Overview

Design Compiler infers master-slave latches by using the `clocked_on_also` attribute. This is a special signal-type attribute that must be applied using an embedded `dc_script`.

In your RTL description, describe the master-slave latch as a flip-flop, using only the slave clock. Specify the master clock as an input port, but do not connect it. In addition, set the `clocked_on_also` attribute on the master clock port.

This coding style requires that cells in the target technology library contain slave clocks defined with the `clocked_on_also` attribute. The `clocked_on_also` attribute defines the slave clocks in the cell's state declaration. For more information about defining slave clocks in the target technology library, see the *Library Compiler User Guide*.

Design Compiler does not use D flip-flops to implement the equivalent functionality of the cell.

Note:

Although the vendor's component behaves as a master-slave latch, Library Compiler supports only the description of a master-slave flip-flop.

Master-Slave Latch With Single Master-Slave Clock Pair

[Example A-24](#) provides the template for a master-slave latch.

See “[dc_tcl_script_begin and dc_tcl_script_end](#)” on page 7-4 for more information on the `dc_tcl_script_begin` and `dc_tcl_script_end` compiler directives. HDL Compiler generates the verbose inference report shown in [Example A-25](#).

Example A-24 Master-Slave Latch

```
module mslatch (SCK, MCK, DATA, Q);
  input SCK, MCK, DATA;
  output Q;
  reg Q;

  //synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
  //set_attribute -type string MCK signal_type clocked_on_also
  //set_attribute -type boolean MCK level_sensitive true
  //synopsys dc_tcl_script_end

  always @ (posedge SCK)
    Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```


Example A-25 Inference Report for a Master-Slave Latch

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Master-Slave Latch With Multiple Master-Slave Clock Pairs

If the design requires more than one master-slave clock pair, you must specify the associated slave clock in addition to the `clocked_on_also` attribute. [Example A-26](#) illustrates the use of the `clocked_on_also` attribute with the `associated_clock` option.

Example A-26 Inferring Master-Slave Latches With Two Pairs of Clocks

```

module mslatch2 (SCK1, SCK2, MCK1, MCK2, D1, D2, Q1, Q2);
  input SCK1, SCK2, MCK1, MCK2, D1, D2;
  output Q1, Q2;
  reg Q1, Q2;

  // synopsys dc_tcl_script_begin
  // set_attribute -type string MCK1 signal_type clocked_on_also
  // set_attribute -type boolean MCK1 level_sensitive true
  // set_attribute -type string MCK1 associated_clock SCK1

  // set_attribute -type string MCK2 signal_type clocked_on_also
  // set_attribute -type boolean MCK2 level_sensitive true
  // set_attribute -type string MCK2 associated_clock SCK2
  // synopsys dc_tcl_script_end

  always @ (posedge SCK1)
    Q1 <= D1;

  always @ (posedge SCK2)
    Q2 <= D2;
endmodule

```

[Example A-27](#) shows the inference reports.

Example A-27 Inference Reports

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q1_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q2_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Master-Slave Latch With Discrete Components

If your target technology library does not contain master-slave latch components, you can infer two-phase systems by using D latches. [Example A-28](#) shows a simple two-phase system with clocks MCK and SCK.

Example A-28 Two-Phase Clocks

```
module latch_verilog (DATA, MCK, SCK, Q);
  input DATA, MCK, SCK;
  output Q;
  reg Q;

  reg TEMP;

  always @(DATA or MCK)
    if (MCK)
      TEMP <= DATA;

  always @(TEMP or SCK)
    if (SCK)
      Q <= TEMP;
endmodule
```

[Example A-29](#) shows the inference reports.

Example A-29 Inference Reports

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
TEMP_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	N	-	-	-

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Latch	1	N	N	N	N	-	-	-

Inferring Flip-Flops

HDL Compiler can infer D flip-flops and JK flip-flops. The following sections provide examples of these flip-flop types:

- [D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use sync_set_reset](#)
- [JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset: Use sync_set_reset](#)

D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Use `sync_set_reset`

[Example A-30](#) infers a D flip-flop with a synchronous set.

The `sync_set_reset` directive is applied to the SET signal. If the target technology library does not have a D flip-flop with synchronous set, Design Compiler infers synchronous set logic as the input to the D pin of the flip-flop. If the set logic is not directly in front of the D pin of the flip-flop, initialization problems can occur during gate-level simulation of the design. The `sync_set_reset` directive ensures that this logic is as close to the D pin as possible.

Example A-30 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set: Uses `sync_set_reset`

```
module dff_sync_set (DATA, CLK, SET, Q);
  input DATA, CLK, SET;
  output Q;
  reg Q;
  //synopsys sync_set_reset "SET"
  always @(posedge CLK)
    if (SET)
      Q <= 1'b1;
    else
      Q <= DATA;
endmodule
```

HDL Compiler generates the inference report shown in [Example A-31](#).

Example A-31 D Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N

JK Flip-Flop With Synchronous Set and Reset: Use `sync_set_reset`

When you infer a JK flip-flop, make sure you can control the J, K, and clock signals from the top-level design ports to ensure that simulation can initialize the design.

[Example A-32](#) infers the JK flip-flop described in [Table A-2](#). In the JK flip-flop, the J and K signals act as active-high synchronous set and reset signals. Use the `sync_set_reset` directive to indicate that the J and K signals are the synchronous set and reset signals (the JK function). Use the `one_hot` directive to prevent priority encoding of the J and K signals.

Table A-2 Truth Table for JK Flip-Flop

J	K	CLK	Qn+1
0	0	Rising	Qn
0	1	Rising	0
1	0	Rising	1
1	1	Rising	QnB
X	X	Falling	Qn

Example A-32 JK Flip-Flop

```
module JK(J, K, CLK, Q);
  input J, K;
  input CLK;
  output Q;
  reg Q;

  // synopsys sync_set_reset "J, K"
  // synopsys one_hot "J, K"

  always @ (posedge CLK)
    case ({J, K})
      2'b01 : Q = 0;
      2'b10 : Q = 1;
      2'b11 : Q = ~Q;
    endcase
endmodule
```

[Example A-33](#) shows the inference report generated by HDL Compiler.

Example A-33 Inference Report

Register Name	Type	Width	Bus	MB	AR	AS	SR	SS	ST
Q_reg	Flip-flop	1	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	N

B

Verilog Language Support

The following sections describe the Verilog language as supported by HDL Compiler:

- [Syntax](#)
- [Verilog Keywords](#)
- [Unsupported Verilog Language Constructs](#)
- [Construct Restrictions and Comments](#)
- [Verilog 2001 Supported Constructs](#)
- [Ignored Constructs](#)
- [Verilog 2001 Feature Examples](#)

Syntax

Synopsys supports the Verilog syntax as described in the IEEE STD 1364-2001.

The lexical conventions HDL Compiler uses are described in the following sections:

- [Comments](#)
- [Numbers](#)

Comments

You can enter comments anywhere in a Verilog description, in two forms:

- Beginning with two slashes `//`
HDL Compiler ignores all text between these characters and the end of the current line.
- Beginning with the two characters `/*` and ending with `*/`
HDL Compiler ignores all text between these characters, so you can continue comments over more than one line.

Note:

You cannot nest comments.

Numbers

You can declare numbers in several different radices and bit-widths. A radix is the base number on which a numbering system is built. For example, the binary numbering system has a radix of 2, octal has a radix of 8, and decimal has a radix of 10.

You can use these three number formats:

- A simple decimal number that is a sequence of digits in the range of 0 to 9. All constants declared this way are assumed to be 32-bit numbers.
- A number that specifies the bit-width as well as the radix. These numbers are the same as those in the previous format, except that they are preceded by a decimal number that specifies the bit-width.

- A number followed by a two-character sequence prefix that specifies the number's size and radix. The radix determines which symbols you can include in the number. Constants declared this way are assumed to be 32-bit numbers. Any of these numbers can include underscores (_), which improve readability and do not affect the value of the number. [Table B-1](#) summarizes the available radices and valid characters for the number.

Table B-1 Verilog Radices

Name	Character prefix	Valid characters
Binary	'b	0 1 x X z Z _ ?
Octal	'o	0–7 x X z Z _ ?
Decimal	'd	0–9 _
Hexadecimal	'h	0–9 a–f A–F x X z Z _ ?

[Example B-1](#) shows some valid number declarations.

Example B-1 Valid Verilog Number Declarations

```

391          // 32-bit decimal number
'h3a13       // 32-bit hexadecimal number
10'o1567     // 10-bit octal number
3'b010       // 3-bit binary number
4'd9         // 4-bit decimal number
40'hFF_FFFF_FFFF // 40-bit hexadecimal number
2'bxx        // 2-bits don't care
3'bzzz       // 3-bits high-impedance

```

Verilog Keywords

[Table B-2](#) lists the Verilog keywords. You cannot use these words as user variable names unless you use an escape identifier.

Important:

Configuration-related keywords are not treated as keywords outside of configurations. HDL Compiler does not support configurations at this time.

Table B-2 Verilog Keywords

always	and	assign	automatic	begin	buf
bufif0	bufif1	case	casex	casez	cell
cmos	config	deassign	default	defparam	design

Table B-2 Verilog Keywords (Continued)

disable	edge	else	end	endcase	endconfig
endfunction	endgenerate	endmodule	endprimitive	endspecify	endtable
endtask	event	for	force	forever	fork
function	generate	genvar	highz0	highz1	if
ifnone	incdir	include	initial	inout	input
instance	integer	join	large	liblist	library
localparam	macromodule	medium	module	nand	negedge
nmos	nor	noshowcancelled	not	notif0	notif1
or	output	parameter	pmos	posedge	primitive
pull0	pull1	pulldown	pullup	pulstyle_ onevent	pulstyle_ _ondetect
rcmos	real	realtime	reg	release	repeat
rnmos	rpmos	rtran	rtranif0	rtranif1	scalared
showcancelled	signed	small	specify	specparam	strong0
strong1	supply0	supply1	table	task	time
tran	tranif0	tranif1	tri	tri0	tri1
triand	trior	trireg	unsigned	use	vectored
wait	wand	weak0	weak1	while	wire
wor	xnor	xor			

Unsupported Verilog Language Constructs

HDL Compiler does not support the following constructs:

- Configurations
- Unsupported definitions and declarations
 - primitive definition
 - time declaration
 - event declaration
 - triand, trior, tri1, tri0, and trireg net types
 - Ranges for integers
- Unsupported statements
 - initial statement
 - repeat statement
 - delay control
 - event control
 - forever statement (The forever loop is only supported if it has an associated disable condition, making the exit condition deterministic.)
 - fork statement
 - deassign statement
 - force statement
 - release statement
- Unsupported operators
 - Case equality and inequality operators (=== and !==)
- Unsupported gate-level constructs
 - nmos, pmos, cmos, rnmos, rpmos, rcmos
 - pullup, pulldown, tranif0, tranif1, rtran, rtrainf0, and rtrainf1 gate types
- Unsupported miscellaneous constructs
 - hierarchical names within a module

If you use an unsupported construct, HDL Compiler issues a syntax error such as

```
event is not supported
```

Construct Restrictions and Comments

Construct restrictions and guidelines are described in the following section:

- [always Blocks](#)
- [generate Statements](#)
- [Conditional Expressions \(?\) Resource Sharing](#)
- [Case](#)
- [defparam](#)
- [disable](#)
- [Blocking and Nonblocking Assignments](#)
- [Macromodule](#)
- [inout Port Declaration](#)
- [tri Data Type](#)
- [Compiler Directives](#)
- [reg Types](#)
- [Types in Busing](#)
- [Combinational while Loops](#)

always Blocks

The tool does not support more than one independent if-block when asynchronous behavior is modeled within an always block. If the always block is purely synchronous, the tool supports multiple independent if-blocks. In addition, the tool does not support more than one ?: operator inside an always block.

generate Statements

Synopsys support of the generate statement is described in the following sections:

- [Generate Overview](#)
- [Restrictions](#)

Generate Overview

HDL Compiler supports both the 2001 and the 2005 generate standards. The default is the 2001 standard. To enable the 2005 standard, set the `hdlin_vrlg_std` variable to 2005. For details on generate naming styles, see the SolvNet article 022167 “Verilog Generate Construct: 2001 and 2005 Naming Styles” and the LRM.

Restrictions

- Hierarchical Names (Cross Module Reference)

HDL Compiler supports hierarchical names or cross-module references, if the hierarchical name remains inside the module that contains the name and each item on the hierarchical path is part of the module containing the reference.

In the following code, the item is not part of the module and is not supported.

```
module top ();
    wire x;
    down d ();
endmodule

module down ();
    wire y, z;
    assign t = top.d.z;
// not supported:
// hier. ref. starts outside current module
endmodule
```

- Parameter Override (defparam)

The use of defparam is highly discouraged in synthesis because of ambiguity problems. Because of these problems, in synthesis, defparam is not supported inside generate blocks. For details, see the Verilog 1800 LRM.

Conditional Expressions (?:) Resource Sharing

HDL Compiler supports resource sharing in conditional expressions such as

```
dout = sel ? (a + b) : (a + c);
```

In such cases, HDL Compiler marks the adders as sharable; Design Compiler determines the final implementation during timing-drive resource sharing.

The tool does not support more than one ?: operator inside an always block. For more information, see [“always Blocks” on page B-6](#).

Case

The case construct is discussed in the following sections:

- [casez and casex](#)
- [Full Case and Parallel Case](#)

casez and casex

HDL Compiler allows ? and z bits in casez items but not in expressions; that is, the z bits are allowed in the branches of the case statement but not in the expression immediately following the casez keyword.

```
casez (y)    // y is referred to as the case expression
2'b1z:      //2'b1z is referred to as the item
```

[Example B-2](#) shows an invalid expression in a casez statement.

Example B-2 Invalid casez Expression

```
casez (1'bz) //illegal testing of an expression
...
endcase
```

The same holds true for casex statements using x, ?, and z. The code

```
casex (a)
2'b1x : // matches 2'b10 and 2'b11
endcase
```

does not equal the following code:

```
b = 2'b1x;
casex (a)
b:    // in this case, 2'b1x only matches 2'b10
endcase
```

When x is assigned to a variable and the variable is used in a casex item, the x does not match both 0 and 1 as it would for a literal x listed in the case item.

Full Case and Parallel Case

Case statements can be full or parallel. HDL Compiler can usually determine automatically whether a case statement is full or parallel. [Example B-3](#) shows a case statement that is both full and parallel.

Example B-3 A case Statement That Is Both Full and Parallel

```
input [1:0] a;
always @(a or w or x or y or z) begin
    case (a)
        2'b11:
            b = w ;
        2'b10:
            b = x ;
        2'b01:
            b = y ;
        2'b00:
            b = z ;
    endcase
end
```

In [Example B-4](#), the case statement is not parallel or full, because the values of inputs w and x cannot be determined.

Example B-4 A case Statement That Is Not Full and Not Parallel

```
always @(w or x) begin
    case (2'b11)
        w:
            b = 10 ;
        x:
            b = 01 ;
    endcase
end
```

However, if you know that only one of the inputs equals 2'b11 at a given time, you can use the `parallel_case` directive to avoid synthesizing an unnecessary priority encoder.

If you know that either w or x always equals 2'b11 (a situation known as a one-branch tree), you can use the `full_case` directive to avoid synthesizing an unnecessary latch. A latch is necessary whenever a variable is conditionally assigned. Marking a case as full tells the compiler that some branch will be taken, so there is no need for an implicit default branch. If a variable is assigned in all branches of the case, HDL Compiler then knows that the variable is not conditionally assigned in that case, and, therefore, that particular case statement does not result in a latch for that variable.

However, if the variable is assigned in only some branches of the case statement, a latch is still required as shown in [Example B-5](#). In addition, other case statements might cause a latch to be inferred for the same variable.

Example B-5 Latch Result When Variable Is Not Fully Assigned

```

reg a, b;
reg [1:0] c;
case (c) // synopsys full_case
  0: begin a = 1; b = 0; end
  1: begin a = 0; b = 0; end
  2: begin a = 1; b = 1; end
  3: b = 1; // a is not assigned here
endcase

```

For more information, see [“parallel_case” on page 7-15](#) and [“full_case” on page 7-7](#).

defparam

Use of defparam is highly discouraged in synthesis because of ambiguity problems. Because of these problems, in synthesis defparam is not supported inside generate blocks. For details, see the Verilog LRM.

disable

HDL Compiler supports the disable statement when you use it in named blocks and when it is used to disable an enclosing block. When a disable statement is executed, it causes the named block to terminate. You cannot disable a block that is not in the same always block or task as the disable statement. A comparator description that uses disable is shown in [Example B-6](#).

Example B-6 Comparator Using disable

```

begin : compare
  for (i = 7; i >= 0; i = i - 1) begin
    if (a[i] != b[i]) begin
      greater_than = a[i];
      less_than = ~a[i];
      equal_to = 0;
      //comparison is done so stop looping
      disable compare;
    end
  end
end

// If you get here a == b
// If the disable statement is executed, the next three
// lines will not be executed
greater_than = 0;
less_than = 0;
equal_to = 1;
end

```

You can also use a disable statement to implement a synchronous reset, as shown in [Example B-7](#).

Example B-7 Synchronous Reset of State Register Using disable in a forever Loop

```

always
begin: foo
  @ (posedge clk)
  if (Reset)
    begin
      z <= 1'b0;
      disable foo;
    end
  z <= a;
end

```

The disable statement in [Example B-7](#) causes the foo block to terminate immediately and return to the beginning of the block.

Blocking and Nonblocking Assignments

HDL Compiler does not allow both blocking and nonblocking assignments to the same variable within an always block.

The following code applies both blocking and nonblocking assignments to the same variable in one always block.

```

always @(posedge clk or negedge reset) begin
  if (~ reset)
    q = 1'b0;
  else
    q <= d;
end

```

HDL Compiler does not permit this and generates an error message.

During simulation, race conditions can result from blocking assignments, as shown in [Example B-8](#). In this example, the value of x is indeterminate, because multiple procedural blocks run concurrently, causing y to be loaded into x at the same time z is loading into y. The value of x after the first @ (posedge clk) is indeterminate. Use of nonblocking assignments solves this race condition, as shown in [Example B-9](#).

In [Example B-8](#) and [Example B-9](#), HDL Compiler creates the gates shown in [Figure B-1](#).

Example B-8 Race Condition Using Blocking Assignments

```

always @(posedge clk)
  x = y;
always @(posedge clk)
  y = z;

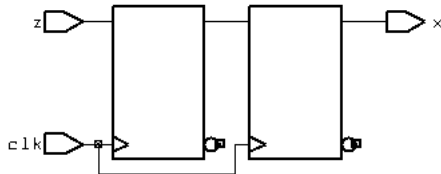
```

Example B-9 Race Solved With Nonblocking Assignments

```

always @(posedge clk)
  x <= y;
always @(posedge clk)
  y <= x;

```

Figure B-1 Simulator Race Condition—Synthesis Gates

If you want to switch register values, use nonblocking assignments, because blocking assignments will not accomplish the switch. For example, in [Example B-10](#), the desired outcome is a swap of the x and y register values. However, after the positive clock edge, y does not end up with the value of x; y ends up with the original value of y. This happens because blocking statements are order dependent and each statement within the procedural block is executed before the next statement is evaluated and executed. In [Example B-11](#), the swap is accomplished with nonblocking assignments.

Example B-10 Swap Problem Using Blocking Assignments

```

always @(posedge clk)
begin
  x = y;
  y = x;
end

```

Example B-11 Swap Accomplished With Nonblocking Assignments

```

always @(posedge clk)
  x <= y;
  y <= x;

```

Macromodule

HDL Compiler treats the macromodule construct as a module construct. Whether you use module or macromodule, the synthesis results are the same.

inout Port Declaration

HDL Compiler allows you to connect inout ports only to module or gate instantiations. You must declare an inout before you use it.

tri Data Type

The tri data type allows multiple three-state devices to drive a wire. When inferring three-state devices, you need to ensure that all the drivers are inferred as three-state devices and that all inputs to a device are z, except the one variable driving the three-state device which will have a 1.

Compiler Directives

Compiler directives are discussed in the following sections:

- ``define`
- ``include`
- ``ifdef`, ``else`, ``endif`, ``ifndef`, and ``elsif`
- ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`
- ``rp_place`
- ``rp_fill`
- ``rp_array_dir`
- `rp_align`
- `rp_orient`
- `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore`
- ``undef`

``define`

The ``define` directive can specify macros that take arguments. For example,

```
`define BYTE_TO_BITS(arg) ((arg) << 3)
```

The ``define` directive can do more than simple text substitution. It can also take arguments and substitute their values in its replacement text.

Macro substitution assigns a string of text to a macro variable. The string of text is inserted into the code where the macro is encountered. The definition begins with the back quotation mark (```), followed by the keyword `define`, followed by the name of the macro variable. All text from the macro variable until the end of the line is assigned to the macro variable.

You can declare and use macro variables anywhere in the description. The definitions can carry across several files that are read into Design Compiler at the same time. To make a macro substitution, type a back quotation mark (```) followed by the macro variable name.

Some sample macro variable declarations are shown in [Example B-12](#).

Example B-12 Macro Variable Declarations

```
`define highbits      31:29
`define bitlist       {first, second, third}
wire [31:0] bus;
`bitlist = bus[`highbits];
```

The `analyze` command `-define` option allows macro definition on the command line. Only one `-define` per `analyze` command is allowed but the argument can be a list of macros, as shown in [Example B-13](#).

When using `-define` with multiple `analyze` commands, you must remove any designs in memory before re-analyzing the design. To remove the designs, use `remove_design -all`.

Because elaborated designs in memory have no timestamps, the tool cannot determine if the analyzed file that the elaborated design is based on has been updated or not. The tool may assume that the previously elaborated (out-of-date) design is up-to-date and reuse it.

Curly brackets are not required to enclose one macro, as shown in [Example B-14](#). However, if the argument is a list of macros, curly brackets are required.

Example B-13 analyze Command With List of Defines

```
analyze -f verilog -define { RIPPLE, SIMPLE } mydesign.v
```

Example B-14 analyze Command With One Define

```
analyze -f verilog -define ONLY_ONE mydesign.v
```

Note:

In the `dctcl` mode, the `read_verilog` command does not accept the `-define` option.

``include`

The ``include` construct in Verilog is similar to the `#include` directive in the C language. You can use this construct to include Verilog code, such as type declarations and functions, from one module in another module. [Example B-15](#) shows an application of the ``include` construct.

Example B-15 Including a File Within a File

```

Contents of file1.v
`define WORDSIZE 8

function [`WORDSIZE-1:0] fastadder;
    input [`WORDSIZE-1:0] fin1, fin2;
    fastadder = fin1 + fin2;
endfunction

Contents of file2.v
module secondfile (clk, in1, in2, out);

    `include "file1.v"
    . . .
    wire [`WORDSIZE-1:0] temp;
    assign temp = fastadder (in1,in2);
    . . .
endmodule

```

Included files can include other files, with up to 24 levels of nesting. You cannot use the ``include` construct recursively.

When your design contains multiple files for multiple sub-blocks and include files for sub-blocks, in their respective sub directories, you can elaborate the top-level design without making any changes to the search path. The tool will automatically find the include files. For example, if your structure is as follows:

```

Rtl/top.v
Rtl/sub_module1/sub_module1.v
Rtl/sub_module2/sub_module2.v
Rtl/sub_module1/sub_module1_inc.v
Rtl/sub_module2/sub_module2_inc.v

```

You do not need to add `Rtl/sub_module1/` and `Rtl/sub_module2/` to your search path to enable the tool to find the include files `sub_module1_inc.v` and `sub_module2_inc.v` when you elaborate `top.v`.

``ifdef`, ``else`, ``endif`, ``ifndef`, and ``elsif`

These directives allow the conditional inclusion of code.

- The ``ifdef` directive executes the statements following it if the indicated macro is defined; if the macro is not defined, the statements after ``else` are executed.
- The ``ifndef` directive executes the statements following it if the indicated macro is not defined; if the macro is defined, the statements after ``else` are executed.

The ``elsif` directive allows one level of nesting and is equivalent to the ``else `ifdef ... `endif` directive sequence.

The macros that are arguments to the ``ifdef` directive can be defined by the ``define` directive. See [“define” on page B-13](#). [Example B-16](#) shows a design that uses the ``ifdef...`else...`endif` directives.

Example B-16 Design Using ``ifdef...`else...`endif` Directives

```
`ifdef SELECT_XOR_DESIGN
module selective_design(a,b,c);
    input a, b;
    output c;
    assign c = a ^ b;
endmodule

`else

module selective_design(a,b,c);
    input a, b;
    output c;
    assign c = a | b;
endmodule
`endif
```

``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`

The ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup` directives allow you to specify a relative placement group. All cell instances declared between the directives are members of the specified group. These directives are available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
`rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_group ( group_name {num_cols num_rows} )
//synopsys rp_endgroup ( {group_name} )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Creating Groups Using ``rp_group` and ``rp_endgroup`” on page 2-4](#).

``rp_place`

The ``rp_place` directive allows you to specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, a keepout region, or an instance to be placed in the current relative placement group. When you use the ``rp_place` directive to specify a subgroup at a specific hierarchy, you must instantiate the subgroup’s instances outside of any group declarations in the module. This directive is available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
`rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
`rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( hier group_name [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ({leaf} [inst_name] col row )
//synopsys rp_place ( keep keepout_name col row width height )
```

For more information and examples, see [“Specifying Subgroups, Keepouts, and Instances Using `rp_place” on page 2-5.](#)

`rp_fill

The ``rp_fill` directive automatically places the cells at the location specified by a pointer. Each time a new instance is declared that is not explicitly placed, it is inserted into the grid at the location indicated by the current value of the pointer. After the instance is placed, the pointer is updated incrementally and the process is ready to be repeated. This directive is available for RTL designs and netlist designs.

The ``rp_fill` arguments define how the pointer is updated. The `col` and `row` parameters specify the initial coordinates of the pointer. These parameters can represent absolute row or column locations in the group’s grid or locations that are relative to the current pointer value. To represent locations relative to the current pointer, enclose the column and row values in angle brackets (<>). For example, assume the current pointer location is (3,4). In this case, specifying `rp_fill <1> 0` initializes the pointer to (4,0) and that is where the next instance is placed. Absolute coordinates must be non-negative integers; relative coordinates can be any integer.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_fill ( {col row} {pattern pat} )
```

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_fill ( col row} {pattern pat} )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Placing Cells Automatically Using `rp_fill” on page 2-6.](#)

`rp_array_dir

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in RTL designs but not in netlist designs.

The ``rp_array_dir` directive specifies whether the elements of an array are placed upward, from the least significant bit to the most significant bit, or downward, from the most significant bit to the least significant bit.

The Verilog syntax for RTL designs is as follows:

```
`rp_array_dir ( up|down )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Placement for Array Elements Using ``rp_array_dir`” on page 2-8](#).

rp_align

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_align` directive explicitly specifies the alignment of the placed instance within the grid cell when the instance is smaller than the cell. If you specify the optional `inst` instance name argument, the alignment applies only to that instance; however, if you do not specify an instance, the new alignment applies to all subsequent instantiations within the group until HDL Compiler encounters another `rp_align` directive. If the instance straddles cells, the alignment takes place within the straddled region. The alignment value is `sw` (southwest) by default. The instance is snapped to legal row and routing grid coordinates.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_align ( n|s|e|w|nw|sw|ne|se|pin=name { inst } )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Cell Alignment Using `rp_align`” on page 2-8](#).

rp_orient

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_orient` directive allows you to control the orientation of library cells placed in the current group. When you specify a list of possible orientations, HDL Compiler chooses the first legal orientation for the cell.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { inst } )
//synopsys rp_orient ( {N|W|S|E|FN|FW|FS|FE}* { group_name inst } )
```

For more information and an example, see [“Specifying Cell Orientation Using rp_orient” on page 2-9](#).

rp_ignore and rp_endignore

Note:

This directive is available for creating relative placement in netlist designs only.

The `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore` directives allow you to ignore specified lines in the input file. Any lines between the two directives are omitted from relative placement. The `include` and `define` directives, variable substitution, and cell mapping are not ignored.

The `rp_ignore` and `rp_endignore` directives allow you to include the instantiation of submodules in a relative placement group close to the `rp_place hier group(inst)` location to place relative placement array.

Use the following syntax for netlist designs:

```
//synopsys rp_ignore
//synopsys rp_endignore
```

For more information and an example, see [“Ignoring Relative Placement Using rp_ignore and rp_endignore” on page 2-10](#).

`undef

The ``undef` directive resets the macro immediately following it.

reg Types

The Verilog language requires that any value assigned inside an always statement must be declared as a reg type. HDL Compiler returns an error if any value assigned inside an always block is not declared as a reg type.

Types in Busing

Design Compiler maintains types throughout a design, including types for buses (vectors). [Example B-17](#) shows a Verilog design read into HDL Compiler containing a bit vector that is NOTed into another bit vector.

Example B-17 Bit Vector in Verilog

```

module test_busing_1 ( a, b );
    input  [3:0] a;
    output [3:0] b;

    assign b = ~a;
endmodule

```

[Example B-18](#) shows the same description written out by HDL Compiler. The description contains the original Verilog types of ports. Internal nets do not maintain their original bus types. Also, the NOT operation is instantiated as single bits.

Example B-18 Bit Blasting

```

module test_busing_2 ( a, b );
    input  [3:0] a;
    output [3:0] b;
    assign b[0] = ~a[0];
    assign b[1] = ~a[1];
    assign b[2] = ~a[2];
    assign b[3] = ~a[3];
endmodule

```

Combinational while Loops

To create a combinational while loop, write the code so that an upper bound on the number of loop iterations can be determined. The loop iterative bound must be statically determinable; otherwise an error is reported.

HDL Compiler needs to be able to determine an upper bound on the number of trips through the loop at compile time. In HDL Compiler, there are no syntax restrictions on the loops; while loops that have no events within them, such as in the following example, are supported.

```

input [9:0] a;
// ....
i = 0;
while ( i < 10 && !a[i] ) begin
    i = i + 1;
    // loop body
end

```

To support this loop, HDL Compiler interprets it like a simulator. The tool stops when the loop termination condition is known to be false. Because HDL Compiler can't determine when a loop is infinite, it stops and reports an error after an arbitrary (but user defined) number of iterations (the default is 1024).

To exit the loop, HDL Compiler allows additional conditions in the loop condition that permit more concise descriptions.

```

for (i = 0; i < 10 && a[i]; i = i+1) begin
    // loop body
end

```

A loop must unconditionally make progress toward termination in each trip through the loop, or it cannot be compiled. The following example makes progress (that is, increments *i*) only when *!done* is true and will not terminate.

```

while ( i < 10 ) begin
    if ( ! done )
        done = a[i];
    // loop body
    i = i + 1;
end
end

```

The following modified version, which unconditionally increments *i*, will terminate. This code creates the desired logic.

```

while ( i < 10 ) begin
    if ( ! done ) begin
        done = a[i];
    end// loop body
    i = i + 1;
end
end

```

In the next example, loop termination depends on reading values stored in *x*. If the value is unknown (as in the first and third iterations), HDL Compiler assumes it might be true and generates logic to test it.

```

x[0] = v;           // Value unknown: implies "if(v)"
x[1] = 1;           // Known TRUE: no guard on 2nd trip
x[2] = w;           // Not known: implies "if(w)"
x[3] = 0;           // Known FALSE: stop the loop

i = 0;
while( x[i] ) begin
    // loop body
    i = i + 1;
end
end

```

This code terminates after three iterations when the loop tests *x[3]*, which contains 0.

In [Example B-19](#), a supported combinational while loop, the code produces gates, and an event control signal is not necessary.

Example B-19 Supported while Loop Code

```

module modified_s2 (a, b, z);
parameter N = 3;
input [N:0] a, b;
output [N:1] z;
reg [N:1] z;
integer i;
always @(a or b or z)
begin
    i = N;
    while (i)
    begin
        z[i] = b[i] + a[i-1];
        i = i - 1;
    end
end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-20](#), a supported combinational while loop, no matter what x is, the loop will run for 16 iterations at most because HDL Compiler can keep track of which bits of x are constant. Even though it doesn't know the initial value of x , it does know that $x \gg 1$ has a zero in the most significant bit (MSB). The next time x is shifted right, it knows that x has two zeros in the MSB, and so on. HDL Compiler can determine when x becomes all zeros.

Example B-20 Supported Combinational while Loop

```

module while_loop_comb1(x, count);
input [7:0] x;
output [2:0] count;
reg [7:0] temp;
reg [2:0] count;
always @ (x)
begin
    temp = x;
    count = 0;
    while (temp != 0)
    begin
        count = count + 1;
        temp = temp >> 1;
    end
end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-21](#), a supported combinational while loop, HDL Compiler knows the initial value of x and can determine $x+1$ and all subsequent values of x .

Example B-21 Supported Combinational while Loop

```

module whil_loop_comb2(y, count1, z);
  input [3:0] y, count1; output [3:0] z;
  reg [3:0] x, z, count;
  always @ (y, count1)
  begin
    x = 2;
    count = count1;
    while (x < 15)
      begin
        count = count + 1;
        x = x + 1;
      end
    z = count;
  end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-22](#), HDL Compiler cannot detect the initial value of i and so cannot support this while loop. [Example B-23](#) is supported because i is determinable.

Example B-22 Unsupported Combinational while Loop

```

module my_loop1 #(parameter N=4) (input [N:0] in, output reg [2*N:0] out);
  reg [N:0] i;
  always @* begin
    i = in;
    out = 0 ;
    while (i>0) begin
      out = out + i;
      i = i - 1;
    end
  end
endmodule

```

Example B-23 Supported Combinational while Loop

```

module my_loop2 #(parameter N=4) (input [N:0] in, output reg [2*N:0] out);
  reg [N:0] i;
  reg [N+1:0] j;
  always @*
  for (j = 0 ; j < (2<<N) ; j = j+1 )
    if (j==in) begin
      i = j;
      out = 0 ;
      while (i>0) begin
        out = out + i;
        i = i - 1;
      end
    end
  end
endmodule

```

Verilog 2001 Supported Constructs

[Table B-3](#) lists the Verilog 2001 features implemented by HDL Compiler. For additional information on these features, see IEEE Std 1364-2001.

Table B-3 Supported Verilog 2001 Constructs

Feature	Description
Automatic tasks and functions	Fully supported
Constant functions	Fully supported
Local parameter	Fully supported
generate statement	Limited support. See “generate Statements” on page B-7 .
SYNTHESIS macro	Fully supported
Implicit net declarations for continuous assignments	Fully supported
`line directive	Fully supported
ANSI-C-style port declarations	Fully supported
Casting operators	Fully supported
Parameter passing by name (IEEE 12.2.2.2)	Fully supported
Implicit event expression list (IEEE 9.7.5)	Fully supported
ANSI-C-style port declaration (IEEE 12.3.3)	Fully supported
Signed/unsigned parameters (IEEE 3.11)	Fully supported
Signed/unsigned nets and registers (IEEE 3.2, 4.3)	Fully supported
Signed/unsigned sized and based constants (IEEE 3.2)	Fully supported

Table B-3 Supported Verilog 2001 Constructs (Continued)

Feature	Description
Multidimensional arrays and arrays of nets (IEEE 3.10)	Fully supported
Part select addressing ([+:] and [-:] operators) (IEEE 4.2.1)	Fully supported
Power operator (**) (IEEE 4.1.5)	Fully supported
Arithmetic shift operators (<<< and >>>) (IEEE 4.1.12)	Fully supported
Sized parameters (IEEE 3.11.1)	Fully supported
`ifndef, `elsif, `undef (IEEE 19.4, 19.3.2)	Fully supported
`ifdef VERILOG_2001 and `ifdef VERILOG_1995	Fully supported
Comma-separated sensitivity lists (IEEE 4.1.15 and 9.7.4)	Fully supported

Ignored Constructs

The following sections include directives that HDL Compiler accepts but ignores.

Simulation Directives

The following directives are special commands that affect the operation of the Verilog HDL simulator:

```
'accelerate
'celldefine
'default_nettype
'endcelldefine
'endprotect
'expand_vectornets
'noaccelerate
'noexpand_vectornets
'noremove_netnames
'nounconnected_drive
'protect
```

```
'remove_netnames  
'resetall  
'timescale  
'unconnected_drive
```

You can include these directives in your design description; HDL Compiler accepts but ignores them.

Verilog System Functions

Verilog system functions are special functions that Verilog HDL simulators implement. Their names start with a dollar sign (\$). All of these functions are accepted but ignored by HDL Compiler with the exception of \$display, which can be useful during synthesis elaboration. See [“Use of \\$display During RTL Elaboration” on page 1-23](#).

Verilog 2001 Feature Examples

This section provides examples for Verilog 2001 features in the following sections:

- [Multidimensional Arrays and Arrays of Nets](#)
- [Signed Quantities](#)
- [Comparisons With Signed Types](#)
- [Controlling Signs With Casting Operators](#)
- [Part-Select Addressing Operators \(\[+:\] and \[-:\]\)](#)
- [Power Operator \(**\)](#)
- [Arithmetic Shift Operators \(<<< and >>>\)](#)

Multidimensional Arrays and Arrays of Nets

HDL Compiler supports multidimensional arrays of any variable or net data type. This added functionality is shown in examples B-24 through B-27.

Example B-24 Multidimensional Arrays

```

module m (a, z);
  input [7:0] a;
  output z;
  reg t [0:3][0:7];
  integer i, j;
  integer k;
  always @(a)
  begin
    for (j = 0; j < 8; j = j + 1)
    begin
      t[0][j] = a[j];
    end
    for (i = 1; i < 4; i = i + 1)
    begin
      k = 1 << (3-i);
      for (j = 0; j < k; j = j + 1)
      begin
        t[i][j] = t[i-1][2*j] ^ t[i-1][2*j+1];
      end
    end
  end
  assign z = t[3][0];
endmodule

```

Example B-25 Arrays of Nets

```

module m (a, z);
  input [0:3] a;
  output z;
  wire x [0:2] ;
  assign x[0] = a[0] ^ a[1];
  assign x[1] = a[2] ^ a[3];
  assign x[2] = x[0] ^ x[1];
  assign z = x[2];
endmodule

```

Example B-26 Multidimensional Array Variable Subscripting

```

reg [7:0] X [0:7][0:7][0:7];

assign out = X[a][b][c][d+:4];

```

Verilog 2001 allows more than one level of subscripting on a variable, without use of a temporary variable.

Example B-27 Multidimensional Array

```

module test(in, en, out, addr_in, addr_out_reg, addr_out_bit, clk);

  input [7:0] in;
  input en, clk;
  input [2:0] addr_in, addr_out_reg, addr_out_bit;

```

```

reg [7:0] MEM [0:7];
output out;

assign out = MEM[addr_out_reg][addr_out_bit];

always @(posedge clk) if (en) MEM[addr_in] = in;
endmodule

```

Signed Quantities

HDL Compiler supports signed arithmetic extensions. Function returns and reg and net data types can be declared as signed. This added functionality is shown in examples B-28 through B-33.

[Example B-28](#) results in a sign extension, that is, z[0] connects to a[0].

Example B-28 Signed I/O Ports

```

module m1 (a, z);
  input signed [0:3] a;
  output signed [0:4] z;
  assign z = a;
endmodule

```

In [Example B-29](#), because 3'sb111 is signed, the tool infers a signed adder. In the generic netlist, the ADD_TC_OP cell denotes a 2's complement adder and z[0] will not be logic 0.

Example B-29 Signed Constants: Code and GTECH Gates

```

module m2 (a, z);
  input signed [0:2] a;
  output [0:4] z;
  assign z = a + 3'sb111;
endmodule

```

In [Example B-30](#), because 4'sd5 is signed, a signed comparator (LT_TC_OP) is inferred.

Example B-30 Signed Registers: Code and GTECH Gates

```

module m3 (a, z);
  input [0:3] a;
  output z;
  reg signed [0:3] x;
  reg z;
  always begin
    x = a;
    z = x < 4'sd5;
  end
endmodule

```

In [Example B-31](#), because in1, in2, and out are signed, a signed multiplier (MULT_TC_OP_8_8_8) is inferred.

Example B-31 Signed Types: Code and Gates

```
module m4 (in1, in2, out);
    input  signed [7:0] in1, in2;
    output signed [7:0] out;
    assign out = in1 * in2;
endmodule
```

The code in [Example B-32](#) results in a signed subtractor (SUB_TC_OP).

Example B-32 Signed Nets: Code and Gates

```
module m5 (a, b, z);
    input  [1:0] a, b;
    output [2:0] z;
    wire signed [1:0] x = a;
    wire signed [1:0] y = b;
    assign z = x - y;
endmodule
```

In [Example B-33](#), because 4'sd5 is signed, a signed comparator (LT_TC_OP) is inferred.

Example B-33 Signed Values

```
module m6 (a, z);
    input [3:0] a;
    output z;
    reg signed [3:0] x;
    wire z;
    always @(a) begin
        x = a;
    end
    assign z = x < -4'sd5;
endmodule
```

Verilog 2001 adds the signed keyword in declarations:

```
reg signed [7:0] x;
```

It also adds support for signed, sized constants. For example, 8'sb11111111 is an 8-bit signed quantity representing -1. If you are assigning it to a variable that is 8 bits or less, 8'sb11111111 is the same as the unsigned 8'b11111111. A behavior difference arises when the variable being assigned to is larger than the constant. This difference occurs because signed quantities are extended with the high-order bit of the constant, whereas unsigned quantities are extended with 0s. When used in expressions, the sign of the constant helps determine whether the operation is performed as signed or unsigned.

HDL Compiler enables signed types by default.

Note:

If you use the `signed` keyword, any signed constant in your code, or explicit type casting between signed and unsigned types, HDL Compiler issues a warning.

Comparisons With Signed Types

Verilog sign rules are tricky. All inputs to an expression must be signed to obtain a signed operator. If one is signed and one unsigned, both are treated as unsigned. Any unsigned quantity in an expression makes the whole expression unsigned; the result doesn't depend on the sign of the left side. Some expressions always produce an unsigned result; these include bit and part-select and concatenation. See IEEE P1364/P5 Section 4.5.1.

You need to control the sign of the inputs yourself if you want to compare a signed quantity against an unsigned one. The same is true for other kinds of expressions. See [Example B-34](#) and [Example B-35](#).

Example B-34 Unsigned Comparison Results When Signs Are Mismatched

```
module m8 (in1, in2, lt);
// in1 is signed but in2 is unsigned
  input signed [7:0] in1;
  input      [7:0] in2;
  output lt;
  wire uns_lt, uns_in1_lt_64;
/* comparison is unsigned because of the sign mismatch, in1
is signed but in2 is unsigned */
  assign uns_lt = in1 < in2;
/* Unsigned constant causes unsigned comparison; so negative
values of in1 would compare as larger than 8'd64 */
  assign uns_in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'd64;
  assign lt = uns_lt + uns_in1_lt_64;
endmodule
```

Example B-35 Signed Values

```
module m7 (in1, in2, lt, in1_lt_64);
  input signed [7:0] in1, in2; // two signed inputs
  output lt, in1_lt_64;
  assign lt = in1 < in2; // comparison is signed
  // using a signed constant results in a signed comparison
  assign in1_lt_64 = in1 < 8'sd64;
endmodule
```

Controlling Signs With Casting Operators

Use the Verilog 2001 casting operators, `$signed()` and `$unsigned()`, to convert an unsigned expression to a signed expression. In [Example B-36](#), the casting operator is used to obtain a signed comparator. Note that simply marking an expression as signed might give undesirable results because the unsigned value might be interpreted as a negative number. To avoid this problem, zero-extend unsigned quantities, as shown in [Example B-36](#).

Example B-36 Casting Operators

```
module m9 (in1, in2, lt);
    input signed [7:0] in1;
    input          [7:0] in2;
    output lt;
    assign lt = in1 < $signed ({1'b0, in2});
    //Cast to get signed comparator.
    //Zero-extend to preserve interpretation of unsigned value as positive
    number.
```

Part-Select Addressing Operators ([+:] and [-:])

Verilog 2001 introduced variable part-select operators. These operators allow you to use variables to select a group of bits from a vector. In some designs, coding with part-select operators improves elaboration time and memory usage.

Variable part-select operators are discussed in the following sections:

- [Variable Part-Select Overview](#)
- [Example—Ascending Array and +:](#)
- [Example—Ascending Array and -:](#)
- [Example—Descending Array and -:](#)
- [Example—Descending Array and +:](#)

Variable Part-Select Overview

A Verilog 1995 part-select operator requires that both upper and lower indexes be constant: `a[2:3]` or `a[value1:value2]`.

The variable part-select operator permits selection of a fixed-width group of bits at a variable base address and takes the following form:

- `[base_expr +: width_expr]` for a positive offset
- `[base_expr -: width_expr]` for a negative offset

The syntax specifies a variable base address and a known constant number of bits to be extracted. The base address is always written on the left, regardless of the declared direction of the array. The language allows variable part-select on the left-hand side (LHS) and the right-hand side (RHS) of an expression. All of the following expressions are allowed:

- `data_out = array_expn[index_var +: 3]`
(part select is on the right-hand side)
- `data_out = array_expn[index_var -: 3]`
(part select is on the right-hand side)
- `array_expn[index_var +: 3] = data_in`
(part select is on the left-hand side)
- `array_expn[index_var -: 3] = data_in`
(part select is on the left-hand side)

[Table](#) shows examples of Verilog 2001 syntax and the equivalent Verilog 1995 syntax.

Verilog 2001 syntax	Equivalent Verilog 1995 syntax	
<code>a[x +: 3]</code> for a descending array	<code>{ a[x+2], a[x+1], a[x] }</code>	<code>a[x+2 : x]</code>
<code>a[x -: 3]</code> for a descending array	<code>{ a[x], a[x-1], a[x-2] }</code>	<code>a[x : x-2]</code>
<code>a[x +: 3]</code> for an ascending array	<code>{ a[x], a[x+1], a[x+2] }</code>	<code>a[x : x+2]</code>
<code>a[x -: 3]</code> for an ascending array	<code>{ a[x-2], a[x-1], a[x] }</code>	<code>a[x-2 : x]</code>

The original HDL Compiler tool allows nonconstant part-selects if the width is constant; HDL Compiler permits only the new syntax.

Example—Ascending Array and -:

The following code uses the `-:` operator to select bits from `Ascending_Array`.

```
reg [0:7] Ascending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Ascending_Array[Index_Var -: 3];
```

The value of `Index_Var` determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following figure, the bits selected are shown as a function of `Index_Var`.

Ascending_Array	[	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7]
Index_Var = 0	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									
Index_Var = 1	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch									
Index_Var = 2		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 3		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 4		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 5		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 6		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 7		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	

`Ascending_Array[Index_Var -: 3]` is functionally equivalent to the following non-computable part-select:

`Ascending_Array[Index_Var - 2 : Index_Var]`

Example—Ascending Array and +:

The following code uses the `+` operator to select bits from `Ascending_Array`.

```
reg [0:7] Ascending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Ascending_Array[Index_Var +: 3];
```

The value of `Index_Var` determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following figure, the bits selected are shown as a function of `Index_Var`.

Ascending_Array	[	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7]
Index_Var = 0		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	

Ascending_Array	[	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7]
Index_Var = 1	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 2	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 3	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	
Index_Var = 4	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 5	•	•	•	•	•		•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 6	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch; see note below.									
Index_Var = 7	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch; see note below.									

Note:

- `Ascending_Array[Index_Var +: 3]` is functionally equivalent to the following noncomputable part-select: `Ascending_Array[Index_Var : Index_Var + 2]`
- Noncomputable part-selects are not supported by the Verilog language. `Ascending_Array[7 +:3]` corresponds to elements `Ascending_Array[7 : 9]` but elements `Ascending_Array[8]` and `Ascending_Array[9]` do not exist. A variable part-select must always compute to a valid index; otherwise, a synthesis elaborate error and a runtime simulation error will result.

Example—Descending Array and -:

The following code uses the `-:` operator to select bits from `Descending_Array`.

```
reg [7:0] Descending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Descending_Array[Index_Var -: 3];
```

The value of `Index_Var` determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following figure, the bits selected are shown as a function of `Index_Var`.

Descending_Array	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0]
[
Index_Var = 0	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch								
Index_Var = 1	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch								

Descending_Array [	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0]
Index_Var = 2	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 3	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 4	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 5	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 6	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 7	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Descending_Array[Index_Var -: 3] is functionally equivalent to the following noncomputable part-select:

Descending_Array[Index_Var : Index_Var - 2]

Example—Descending Array and +:

The code below uses the +: operator to select bits from Descending_Array.

```
reg [7:0] Descending_Array;
...
Data_Out = Descending_Array[Index_Var +: 3];
```

The value of Index_Var determines the starting point for the bits selected. In the following figure, the bits selected are shown as a function of Index_Var.

Descending_Array [	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0]
Index_Var = 0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 1	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 2	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 3	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Descending_Array	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0]
[
Index_Var = 4	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 5	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Index_Var = 6	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch							
Index_Var = 7	not valid, synthesis/simulation mismatch							

Descending_Array[Index_Var +: 3] is functionally equivalent to the following noncomputable part-select:

Descending_Array[Index_Var + 2 : Index_Var]

Noncomputable part-selects are not supported by the Verilog language.

Descending_Array[7 +:3] corresponds to elements Descending_Array[9 : 7] but elements Descending_Array[9] and Descending_Array[8] do not exist. A variable part-select must always compute to a valid index; otherwise, a synthesis elaborate error and a runtime simulation error will result.

Power Operator (**)

This operator performs y^x , as shown in [Example B-37](#).

Example B-37 Power Operators

```
module m #(parameter b=2, c=4) (a, x, y, z);
  input [3:0] a;
  output [7:0] x, y, z;

  assign z = 2 ** a;
  assign x = a ** 2;
  assign y = b ** c; // where b and c are constants
endmodule
```

Arithmetic Shift Operators (<<< and >>>)

The arithmetic shift operators allow you to shift an expression and still maintain the sign of a value, as shown in [Example B-38](#). When the type of the result is signed, the arithmetic shift operator (>>>) shifts in the sign bit; otherwise it shifts in zeros.

Example B-38 *Shift Operator Code and Gates*

```
module s1 (A, S, Q);
  input signed [3:0] A;
  input [1:0] S;
  output [3:0] Q;
  reg [3:0] Q;
  always @(A or S)
  begin

    // arithmetic shift right,
    // shifts in sign-bit from left

    Q = A >>> S;
  end
endmodule
```


Glossary

anonymous type

A predefined or underlying type with no name, such as universal integers.

ASIC

Application-specific integrated circuit.

behavioral view

The set of Verilog statements that describe the behavior of a design by using sequential statements. These statements are similar in expressive capability to those found in many other programming languages. See also the *data flow view*, *sequential statement*, and *structural view* definitions.

bit-width

The width of a variable, signal, or expression in bits. For example, the bit-width of the constant 5 is 3 bits.

character literal

Any value of type CHARACTER, in single quotation marks.

computable

Any expression whose (constant) value HDL Compiler can determine during translation.

constraints

The designer's specification of design performance goals. Design Compiler uses constraints to direct the optimization of a design to meet area and timing goals.

convert

To change one type to another. Only integer types and subtypes are convertible, along with same-size arrays of convertible element types.

data flow view

The set of Verilog statements that describe the behavior of a design by using concurrent statements. These descriptions are usually at the level of Boolean equations combined with other operators and function calls. See also the *behavioral view* and *structural view*.

Design Compiler

The Synopsys tool that synthesizes and optimizes ASIC designs from multiple input sources and formats.

design constraints

See *constraints*.

flip-flop

An edge-sensitive memory device.

HDL

Hardware Description Language.

HDL Compiler

The Synopsys Verilog synthesis product.

identifier

A sequence of letters, underscores, and numbers. An identifier cannot be a Verilog reserved word, such as *type* or *loop*. An identifier must begin with a letter or an underscore.

latch

A level-sensitive memory device.

netlist

A network of connected components that together define a design.

optimization

The modification of a design in an attempt to improve some performance aspect. Design Compiler optimizes designs and tries to meet specified design constraints for area and speed.

port

A signal declared in the interface list of an entity.

reduction operator

An operator that takes an array of bits and produces a single-bit result, namely the result of the operator applied to each successive pair of array elements.

register

A memory device containing one or more flip-flops or latches used to hold a value.

resource sharing

The assignment of a similar Verilog operation (for example, +) to a common netlist cell. Netlist cells are the resources—they are equivalent to built hardware.

RTL

Register transfer level, a set of structural and data flow statements.

sequential statement

A set of Verilog statements that execute in sequence.

signal

An electrical quantity that can be used to transmit information. A signal is declared with a type and receives its value from one or more drivers. Signals are created in Verilog through either wire or reg declarations.

signed value

A value that can be positive, zero, or negative.

structural view

The set of Verilog statements used to instantiate primitive and hierarchical components in a design. A Verilog design at the structural level is also called a netlist. See also *behavioral view* and *data flow view*.

subtype

A type declared as a constrained version of another type.

synthesis

The creation of optimized circuits from a high-level description. When Verilog is used, synthesis is a two-step process: translation from Verilog to gates by HDL Compiler and optimization of those gates for a specific ASIC library with Design Compiler.

technology library

A library of ASIC cells available to Design Compiler during the synthesis process. A technology library can contain area, timing, and functional information on each ASIC cell.

translation

The mapping of high-level language constructs onto a lower-level form. HDL Compiler translates RTL Verilog descriptions to gates.

type

In Verilog, the mechanism by which objects are restricted in the values they are assigned and the operations that can be applied to them.

unsigned

A value that can be only positive or zero.

Index

Symbols

`$display` 1-23

`**` (power operator) B-36

`+:` (variable part-select operator) B-31

`-:` (variable part-select operator) B-31

`<<<` (arithmetic shift operator) B-36

`>>>` (arithmetic shift operator) B-36

`" - "` operator 3-4

`" + "` operator 3-4

`"<"` operator 3-4

`">"` operator 3-4

`'define` B-13

`'else` B-15

`'elsif` B-15

`'endif` B-15

`'ifdef VERILOG_1995` B-25

`'ifdef VERILOG_2000` B-25

`'ifdef`, `'else`, `'endif`, `'ifndef`, and `'elsif` B-15

`'ifndef` B-15

`'include` B-14

`'undefineall` 1-20

A

adders 2-2

 carry bit overflow 3-5

 carry-lookahead adder A-8

always block

 edge expressions 2-27

always construct 1-19, 1-24, 2-24, 3-30, 6-1,
 6-4, B-10, B-11

arithmetic shift operators B-36

Arrays of nets B-25

assign 8-8

assignments

 always construct 1-19, 1-24, 2-24, 3-30, 6-1,
 6-4, B-10, B-11

 blocking B-11, B-12

 continuous 8-6, A-3, B-24

 initial B-4, B-5

 nonblocking 1-24, B-11, B-12

Asynchronous Designs 2-24

asynchronous processes 2-27

B

binary numbers B-2

bit accesses 3-26

bit and memory accesses 3-26

bit-blasting B-19

bit-truncation

 explicit 3-28

bit-width

- prefix for numbers B-2
- specifying in numbers B-2
- blocking and nonblocking B-11
- blocking assignments B-11, B-12
- bus_multiple_separator_style 7-13
- bus_naming_style variable 1-26
- bus_range_separator_style 7-12
- Busing B-19

C

- carry-lookahead adder A-8
- case statements
 - casex, casez B-8
 - hdlin_infer_mux 8-3
 - hdlin_mux_size_limit 8-5
 - in while loops 3-25
 - missing assignment in a case statement
 - branch 3-25
 - SELECT_OP Inference 3-13
 - used in multiplexing logic 3-12
- casex B-8
- casez B-8
- casting operators B-31
- coding for QoR 2-2
- coding guidelines 2-17
- coding guidelines for DC Ultra datapath
 - optimization
 - bit-truncation
 - implicit 3-28
- combinational logic 3-1
- Comma-separated sensitivity lists B-25
- compiler directives B-13
- conditional assignments
 - if-else A-16
- conditional inclusion of code
 - 'ifdef, 'else, 'endif, 'ifndef, and 'elsif Directives
 - B-15
- constant propagation 2-2
- continuous assignments 8-6, A-3, B-24

- hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple_drivers 8-6
- controlling signs B-31

D

- D flip-flop, see flip-flop
- Data-Path Duplication A-13
- dc_script_end directive 7-4, 7-5
- decimal numbers B-2
- declaration requirements
 - tri data type B-13
- deprecated features 7-19
- Design Compiler 1-17, 1-26, 2-24, 3-5, 5-3, 7-14, 7-15, A-30
- directives
 - 'define B-13
 - 'else B-15
 - 'endif B-15
 - 'include B-14
 - 'undef B-19
 - 'undefineall 1-20
 - dc_script_begin 7-4
 - dc_script_end 7-4
 - dont_infer_multibit 7-11
 - full_case 7-7
 - infer_multibit 7-10, 7-11
 - infer_mux 3-16, 7-13
 - infer_onehot_mux 3-14, 7-14
 - multibit inference 7-9
 - one_cold 4-15, 7-14
 - one_hot 7-14
 - parallel_case 7-15
 - parallel_case used with full_case 7-8
 - rp_align 2-8, B-18
 - rp_array_dir 2-8, B-18
 - rp_endgroup 2-4, B-16
 - rp_endignore 2-10, B-19
 - rp_fill 2-6, B-17
 - rp_group 2-4, B-16
 - rp_ignore 2-10, B-19
 - rp_orient 2-9, B-18

- rp_place 2-5, B-16
- see also `hdlin_` for variables
- simulation B-25
- disable B-10
- don't care 3-25
- don't cares
 - in case statements 3-25
 - simulation/synthesis mismatch 2-26

E

- ELAB-292 3-11
- ELAB-302 4-13
- ELAB-366 6-6, 6-7
- elaboration errors, reporting 1-7
- elaboration reports 1-6
- embedded 3-25
- embedding constraints and attributes
 - `dc_script_end` 7-4
- embedding constraints and attributes
 - `dc_script_begin` 7-4
- enum directive 7-6
- enumerated type inference report 5-7
- enumerated types 5-7
- errors 1-23, 3-16, 6-2, 6-7, 7-5, 8-3, 8-6, B-6, B-19, B-20
 - ELAB-302 4-13
 - ELAB-366 6-6
 - ELAB-900 B-20
- Explicit bit-truncation 3-28
- expression tree
 - optimized for delay 3-6
- inference report 5-6
- finite state machines
 - automatic detection 5-1
- flip 4-4
- flip-flop
 - asynchronous set and reset conditions for flip-flops 8-2, 8-4
 - `clocked_on_also` attribute A-32
 - control register inference
 - `hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset` 8-2
 - `hdlin_ff_always_sync_set_reset` 8-2
- D-flip-flop
 - D flip-flop with a synchronous load and an asynchronous load 4-20
 - D flip-flop with an asynchronous reset 4-18
 - D flip-flop with an asynchronous set 4-18
 - D flip-flop with synchronous reset 4-20
 - D flip-flop with synchronous set A-35
 - rising-edge-triggered D flip-flop 4-17
 - `hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset` 8-2, 8-4
 - `hdlin_ff_always_sync_set_reset` 8-2
- infer as multibit 7-11
- master-slave latches A-32
- SEQGENs 4-2
- synchronous set and reset conditions for flip-flops 8-2
- used to describe the master-slave latch A-32
- flows
 - interacting with low-power flows 2-20
 - interacting with other flows 2-19
 - interacting with Synthesis flows 2-19
 - interacting with verification flows 2-23
- for loop 3-31
- FSM inference variables 5-3
- `fsm_auto_inferring` 5-3
- `full_case` 7-7
- functional description
 - function declarations in 1-24
- functions 1-26, 2-28, 5-2, 6-2, 7-5, B-4, B-14, B-26, B-28, GL-1

F

- file format, automatic detection of 1-5
- finite state machine 5-3
 - automatic detection 5-1
 - `fsm_auto_inferring` 5-3

G

gate-level constructs 1-24

H

hdlin_build_selectop_for_var _index 8-2
 hdlin_check_no_latch 8-2
 hdlin_elab_errors_deep 1-7
 hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset 8-2, 8-4
 hdlin_ff_always_async_set_reset directive 8-2
 hdlin_ff_always_sync_set_reset 8-2
 hdlin_infer_enumerated_types 8-2
 hdlin_infer_function_local _latches 8-2
 hdlin_infer_mux 8-3
 hdlin_keep_signal_name variable 2-20
 hdlin_module_arch_name_split 8-4
 hdlin_mux_oversize_ratio 8-4
 hdlin_mux_size_limit 8-5
 hdlin_mux_size_min 8-5
 hdlin_mux_size_only 3-17
 hdlin_no_sequential_mapping 8-5
 hdlin_one_hot_one_cold_on 8-5
 hdlin_optimize_array_references 8-5
 hdlin_optimize_enum_types 5-7, 8-5
 hdlin_preserve_sequential variable 4-8, 8-6
 hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple _drivers 8-6
 hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple_drivers 6-6
 hdlin_reporting_level directive 5-3
 hdlin_reporting_level variable 1-6, 4-5, 6-2
 hdlin_subprogram_default_values 8-7
 hdlin_upcase_names 8-7
 hdlin_vrlg_std 1-6
 hexadecimal numbers B-2
 hierarchical
 boundaries 1-26
 constructs 1-24

I

If 4-4
 if statements
 hdlin_infer_mux 8-3
 in case statements 3-25
 infer MUX_OP cells 3-16
 ifdef VERILOG_1995 B-25
 ifdef VERILOG_2001 B-25
 if-else A-16
 ignored functions B-26
 implicit bit-truncation 3-28
 include B-14
 incompletely specified case statement 3-26
 infer_multibit 7-10
 infer_mux 3-16
 infer_mux directive 7-13
 infer_onehot_mux directive 3-14, 7-14
 inference report
 description 6-2
 inference reports 4-5
 enumerated types 5-7
 finite state machine 5-6
 multibit components 7-10
 inferring flip-flops 4-16
 initial assignment B-4, B-5
 inout
 connecting to gate B-12
 connecting to module B-12
 instantiations 1-24, 1-26, 6-6, 8-8, A-26, A-28,
 A-29, B-12

L

latches
 avoiding unintended latches 3-30
 clocked_on_also A-32
 D latch 4-14
 D latch with an active-low asynchronous set
 and reset 4-15
 generic sequential cells (SEQGENs) 4-2

- master-slave latches A-32
- resulting from conditionally assigned variables 4-13
- SR latches A-30
- late-arriving signals
 - A-13
 - datapath duplication solution A-13
 - moving late-arriving signal close to output solution A-13
- lexical conventions B-2
- license requirements 1-31
- limitations
 - multibit inference 7-13
- loops
 - case statements
 - in while loops 3-25

M

- macro substitution B-13
- macromodule B-12
- macros B-16
 - global reset
 - 'undefineall 1-20
 - local reset
 - 'undefineall B-19
- macro definition on the command line B-14
- PRESTO 1-19
- specifying macros
 - 'define B-13
- specifying macros that take arguments B-13
- SYNTHESIS 1-19
- VERILOG_1995 1-19
- VERILOG_2001 1-19
- memory accesses 3-26
- mismatch 6-2
 - full_case usage 7-7
 - parallel_case usage 7-15
 - simulator/synthesis 6-2
 - three-states 2-24, 6-4
 - z value 6-2

- z value comparison 6-2
- module
 - connecting to inout B-12
- multibit components
 - advantages 7-10
 - benefits 6-1
 - bus_multiple_separator_style 7-13
 - bus_range_separator_style 7-12
 - described 6-1
 - directives
 - dont_infer_multibit 7-10
 - infer_multibit 7-10
 - inference limitations 7-13
 - multibit inference report 7-10
 - report_multibit command 7-12
- multibit inference directives 7-9
- multidimensional arrays B-26
- multiplexer
 - cell size 3-17, 3-21
 - MUX_OP 3-19
 - see also multiplexing logic
- multiplexers 3-26
- multiplexing logic
 - case statements embedded in if-then-else statements 3-25
 - case statements in while loops 3-25
 - case statements that contain don't care values 3-25
 - case statements that have a missing case statement branch 3-25
 - Design Compiler implementation 3-14
 - for bit or memory accesses 3-26
 - hdlin_infer_mux variable 3-16
 - hdlin_mux_size_limit 8-5
 - if-else-begin-if constructs A-16
 - implement conditional operations implied by if and case statements 3-13
 - incompletely specified case statement 3-26
 - infer MUX_OP cells 3-15
 - infer_mux 3-16
 - MUX_OP cells 3-12
 - MUX_OP Inference Limitations 3-25

- preferentially map multiplexing logic to multiplexers 3-12
- SELECT_OP cells 3-12
- sequential if statements A-16
- warning message 3-26
- with if and case statements 3-12
- MUX_OP cells
 - setting size_only attribute 3-17
- MUX_OP inference 3-15

N

- nonblocking assignments 1-24, B-11, B-12
- number
 - binary B-2
 - decimal B-2
 - formats B-2
 - hexadecimal B-2
 - octal B-2
 - specifying bit-width B-2

O

- octal numbers B-2
- one 7-14
- one_cold directive 4-15, 7-14
- one_hot directive 7-14
- one-hot multiplexer 3-14
- operators
 - casting B-31
 - power B-36
 - shift B-36
 - variable part-select B-31
- optimization 5-1
 - fsm_auto_inferring 5-3

P

- parallel_case 7-7, 7-15
- parameterized design 1-20

- parameters 1-18, 1-20, 1-23, 2-2, 7-6, 7-19, B-4, B-24
- Part-Select Addressing B-31
- ports
 - inout port requirements B-12
- Power B-36
- power operator (**) B-36
- pragma, see directives
- processes
 - asynchronous 2-27
 - synchronous 2-27

R

- radices B-2
- read_file -format command 1-5
- reading designs
 - analyze -f verilog { files } elaborate 1-18
 - automatic structure detector 1-17
 - netlists 1-17
 - parameterized designs 1-17
 - read -f verilog -netlist { files } (dcsh) 1-18
 - read_file -f verilog -netlist { files } (tcl) 1-18
 - read_file -f verilog -rtl { files } 1-18
 - read_verilog 1-18
 - read_verilog -netlist { files } (tcl) 1-18
 - read_verilog -rtl { files } (tcl) 1-18
 - RTL 1-17
- register inference
 - variables that control inference 8-2
- register inference examples 4-13
- relative placement 2-3
 - compiler directives 2-4, B-13
 - creating groups 2-4, B-16
 - examples 2-11
 - figures 2-12
 - ignoring 2-10, B-19
 - placing cells automatically 2-6, B-17
 - specifying cell alignment 2-8, B-18
 - specifying cell orientation 2-9, B-18
 - specifying placement 2-8, B-18

- specifying subgroups, keepouts, and instances 2-5, B-16
- remove_design 1-18
- removing designs 1-18
- report_multibit 7-12
- report_multibit command 7-12
- resets
 - global reset
 - 'undefineall 1-20
 - local reset
 - 'undef B-19

S

- SELECT_OP 3-13
- sensitivity list 2-27
- Sequential if statements A-16
- set and reset conditions for flip-flops 8-2, 8-4
- shift operators B-36
- Sign Conversion Warnings 3-7
- sign rules B-30
- signal names, keeping 2-20
- signed arithmetic extensions B-28
- Signed Constants B-28
- Signed I/O Ports B-28
- signed keyword B-29
- Signed Registers B-28
- Signed Types B-29
- signs
 - casting operator B-31
 - controlling signs B-31
 - sign conversion warnings B-31
- simulation
 - directives B-25
- simulator/synthesis mismatch
 - full_case usage 7-7
 - parallel_case usage 7-15
- slow reads 1-17
- standard macros
 - macro definition on the command line B-14

- PRESTO 1-19
 - see also macros
- SYNTHESIS 1-19
- VERILOG_1995 1-19
- VERILOG_2001 1-19
- structural description
 - elements of 1-24
- synchronous
 - processes 2-27
- SYNTHESIS macro B-24
- synthetic comments. *See* directives
- system functions, Verilog B-26

T

- tasks 1-23, 1-24, 1-26, 2-27, 2-28, 5-2, 8-2, B-4, B-10
- template
 - directive 7-19
 - See also parameterized designs
- three-state buffer
 - hdlin_prohibit_nontri_multiple_drivers 6-6
 - tri data type B-13
- tri Data Type declaration requirement B-13
- two-phase design A-34

U

- unloaded registers, keeping 4-8

V

- variable
 - conditionally assigned 4-13
 - reading 4-13
- variable part-select operators B-31
- variables, (see hdlin_)
- VER 3-7
- VER-318 3-7, 3-8, 3-9, 3-11, 3-12
- Verilog
 - keywords B-3

- system function B-26
- Verilog 2001 features B-24
 - 'ifndef, 'elsif, 'undef B-25
 - ANSI-C-style port declaration B-24
 - arithmetic shift operators B-25
 - casting operators B-24
 - comma-separated sensitivity lists B-25
 - disabling features 1-19
 - hdlin_vrlg_std = 1995 1-19
 - hdlin_vrlg_std = 2001 1-19
 - implicit event expression list B-24
 - multidimensional arrays B-25
 - parameter passing by name B-24
 - power operator (**) B-25
 - signed/unsigned nets and registers B-24
 - signed/unsigned parameters B-24
 - signed/unsigned sized and based constants B-24

- sized parameters B-25
- SYNTHESIS macro B-24
- Verilog language version, controlling 1-6
- verilogout_ variables 8-8
- verilogout_no_tri variable 8-8
- vrlg_std 8-7

W

- warnings
 - asynchronous designs 2-24
 - encodings 7-6
 - hdlin_unsigned_integers B-30
 - sign conversion 3-8
 - VER-318 3-8
- while loop B-20, B-21, B-22, B-23
- write_timing command 8-8